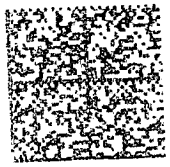
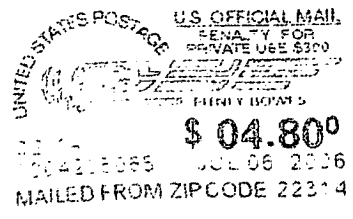
Organization TC1600 Bldg./Room REMSEN

U. S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
~~COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS~~
P.O. BOX 1450
ALEXANDRIA, VA 22313-1450
IF UNDELIVERABLE RETURN IN TEN DAYS

OFFICIAL BUSINESS

AN EQUAL OPPORTUNITY EMPLOYER





NIXIE 3013 1 15 07/10/06

RETURN TO SENDER
NOT DELIVERABLE AS ADDRESSED
UNABLE TO FORWARD
RETURN TO SENDER

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
10/601,140	06/20/2003	Sakari Kauppinen	57764 (71994)	6647

7590 06/30/2006

Dianne M. Rees, Ph.D
Edwards & Angell, LLP
PO Box 9169
Boston, MA 02209

EXAMINER	
CROW, ROBERT THOMAS	

ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
1634	

DATE MAILED: 06/30/2006

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

whereupon the mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (500 cm^3) and washed with a saturated solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (2 x 200 cm^3). The aqueous phase was extracted using continuous extraction for 12 h and the combined extract was dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give furanose **20** as a white solid material (3.24 g, 75%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 5.84 (1H, d, *J* 3.7, 1-H), 5.74 (1H, dd, *J* 11.0, 17.2, 1'-H), 5.52 (1H, dd, *J* 1.6, 17.1, 2'-H_a), 5.29 (1H, dd, *J* 1.3, 11.0, 2'-H_b), 4.21 (1H, d, *J* 3.7, 2-H), 3.98 (1H, t, *J* 5.7, 4-H), 3.68-3.64 (2H, m, 5-H_a, 5-H_b), 2.88 (1H, s, 3-OH), 1.99 (1H, t, *J* 6.3, 5-OH), 1.60 (3H, s, CH_3), 1.35 (3H, s, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 133.6 (C-1'), 116.2 (C-2'), 113.0 ($C(CH_3)_2$), 103.8 (C-1), 83.4, 82.4 (C-4, C-2), 79.6 (C-3), 61.3 (C-5), 26.5, 26.4 (CH_3).

Example 22

3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-1,2-*O*-isopropylidene-3-*C*-vinyl-α-D-ribofuranose (21). A 60% suspension of sodium hydride (w/w, 1.78 g, 44.5 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (50 cm^3) was stirred at 0 °C and a solution of furanose **20** (3.20 g, 14.8 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (35 cm^3) was added dropwise over 30 min. The mixture was stirred at 50 °C for 1 h and subsequently cooled to 0 °C. A solution of benzyl bromide (5.3 mL, 44.5 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (5.3 cm^3) was added dropwise, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 h. The reaction mixture was evaporated and redissolved in dichloromethane (300 cm^3), washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 200 cm^3) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvents were removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using petroleum ether/ethylacetate (9:1, v/v) as eluent to give furanose **21** as a white solid material (5.36 g, 91%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 7.40-7.26 (10H, m, Bn), 5.90 (1H, d, *J* 3.6, 1-H), 5.72 (1H, dd, *J* 11.1, 17.9, 1'-H), 5.41 (1H, dd, *J* 0.7, 11.1, 2'-H_a), 5.30 (1H, dd, *J* 0.5, 17.8, 2'-H_b), 4.70-4.45 (6H, m, Bn, 2-H, 4-H), 3.69 (1H, dd, *J* 2.6, 10.8, 5-H_a), 3.50 (1H, dd, *J* 7.9, 10.9, 5-H_b), 1.64 (3H, s, CH_3), 1.40 (3H, s, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 138.6, 138.3 (Bn), 134.5 (C-1'), 128.3-127.4 (Bn), 118.2 (C-2'), 112.9 ($C(CH_3)_2$), 104.7 (C-1), 84.7, 81.1, 81.0 (C-2, C-3, C-4), 73.3 (C-5), 69.4, 67.0 (Bn), 26.8, 26.6 (CH_3).

Example 23

1,2-Di-*O*-acetyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-3-*C*-vinyl-α,β-D-ribofuranose (22). A solution of furanose **21** (4.40 g, 11.1 mmol) in 80% aqueous acetic acid (50 cm^3) was stirred at 90 °C for 8 h. The solvents were removed and the residue was coevaporated with 99% ethanol (3 x 25 cm^3), toluene (3 x 25 cm^3) and anhydrous pyridine (2 x 25 cm^3) and redissolved in anhydrous pyridine (20 cm^3). Acetic anhydride (17 cm^3) was added and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 48 h. The reaction was quenched with ice-cold water (100 cm^3) and extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 100 cm^3). The combined extract was washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 100 cm^3) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using petroleum ether/ethylacetate (4:1, v/v) as eluent to give furanose **22** as an oil (4.27 g, 87%, α:β ~ 1:1). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 169.9, 169.8 (C=O), 139.0, 138.6, 138.0, 137.8 (Bn), 133.3, 132.4 (C-1'), 128.4-126.8 (Bn), 119.6, 119.5 (C-2'), 99.5, 94.0 (C-1), 85.4, 85.0, 84.3, 83.6, 77.7, 73.6, 73.5, 73.3, 70.0, 69.2, 67.5, 67.2 (C-2, C-3, C-4, C-5, Bn), 21.0, 20.9, 20.6, 20.4 (CH_3).

Example 24

1-(2-*O*-Acetyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-3-*C*-vinyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)thymine (23). To a stirred solution of compound **22** (4.24 g, 9.6 mmol) and thymine (2.43 g, 19.3 mmol) in anhydrous acetonitrile (100 cm^3) was added *N,O*-bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (11.9 cm^3, 48.1 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at reflux for 30 min. After cooling to 0 °C, trimethylsilyl triflate (3.2 cm^3, 16.4 mmol) was added dropwise and the solution was stirred for 24 h at room temperature. The reaction was quenched with cold saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate (100 cm^3) and the resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 50 cm^3). The combined extract was washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate (2 x 50 cm^3) and brine (2 x 50 cm^3) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The extract was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **23** as a white foam (4.03 g, 83%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 8.78 (1H, br s, NH), 7.75 (1H, s, 6-H), 7.38-7.26 (10 H, m, Bn), 6.49 (1H, d, *J* 8.1, 1'-H), 5.99-5.88 (2H, m, 2'-H and 1''-H), 5.54-5.48 (2H, m, 2''-H_a, 2''-H_b), 4.91-4.50 (4H, m, Bn), 4.34 (1H, s, 4'-H), 3.80 (1H, m, 5'-H_a), 3.54 (1H, m, 5'-H_b), 2.11 (3H, s, $COCH_3$), 1.48 (3H, s, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 170.1 (C=O), 163.8

(C-4), 151.0 (C-2), 138.9, 136.9 (Bn), 136.1 (C-6), 132.0 (C-1''), 128.7, 128.5, 128.2, 127.8, 127.7, 127.5, 127.5, 127.1 (Bn), 120.7 (C-2''), 111.3 (C-5), 85.4 (C-1'), 85.2 (C-3'), 84.3 (C-4'), 76.0 (C-2'), 73.7 (C-5'), 69.3, 67.6 (Bn), 20.6 ($COCH_3$), 11.7 (CH_3). Found: C, 66.3; H, 6.0; N, 5.1; $C_{28}H_{30}N_2O_7$ requires C, 66.4; H, 6.0; N, 5.5%.

Example 25

1-(3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-3-*C*-vinyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)thymine (24). To a stirred solution of nucleoside **23** (3.90 g, 7.7 mmol) in anhydrous methanol (40 cm^3) was added sodium methoxide (0.83 g, 15.4 mmol). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 42 h and then neutralised with dilute aqueous hydrochloric acid. The mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 150 cm^3), and the combined extract was washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 100 cm^3) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give nucleoside **24** as a white foam (3.48 g, 97%). $\delta_H(CDCl_3)$ 8.89 (1H, br s, NH), 7.60 (1H, d, *J* 0.9, 6-H), 7.36-7.26 (10H, m, Bn), 6.23 (1H, d, *J* 7.8, 1'-H), 5.98 (1H, dd, *J* 11.2, 17.7, 1''-H), 5.66 (1H, d, *J* 17.7, 2''-H_a), 5.55 (1H, d, *J* 11.5, 2''-H_b), 4.75-4.37 (6H, m, 2'-H, 4'-H, Bn), 3.84 (1H, dd, *J* 2.7, 10.8, 5'-H_a), 3.58 (1H, d, *J* 11.2, 5'-H_b), 3.23 (1H, d, *J* 10.6, 2'-OH), 1.50 (3H, s, CH_3). $\delta_C(CDCl_3)$ 163.7 (C-4), 151 3 (C-2), 138.0, 136.9 (Bn), 136.0 (C-6), 131.2 (C-1''), 128.8, 128.6, 128.3, 127.8, 127.7, 127.3 (Bn), 120.7 (C-2''), 111.3 (C-5), 87.3 (C-1'), 84.6 (C-3'), 81.4 (C-4'), 78.0 (C-2'), 73.7 (C-5'), 70.0, 66.4 (Bn), 11.8 (CH_3). Found: C, 66.8; H, 6.2; N, 5.9; $C_{26}H_{28}N_2O_6$ requires C, 67.2; H, 6.1; N, 6.0%.

Example 26

1-(3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-2-*O*-methanesulfonyl-3-*C*-vinyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)thymine (25). Nucleoside **24** (2.57 g, 5.53 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous pyridine (18 cm^3) and cooled to 0 °C. Methanesulfonyl chloride (1.28 cm^3, 16.6 mmol) was added dropwise and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 min. The reaction was quenched with water (5 cm^3) and the resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 80 cm^3). The combined extract was washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 120 cm^3) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give

nucleoside **25** as a yellow foam (2.53 g, 84%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 8.92 (1H, br s, NH), 7.71 (1H, d, *J* 1.4, 6-H), 7.41-7.28 (10H, m, Bn), 6.57 (1H, d, *J* 7.8, 1'-H), 5.99-5.61 (4H, m, 2'-H, 1''-H and 2''-H_a, 2''-H_b), 4.86-4.50 (4H, m, Bn), 4.37 (1H, dd, *J* 1.5, 2.4, 4'-H), 8.82 (1H, dd, *J* 2.6, 11.0, 5'-H_a), 3.55 (1H, dd, *J* 1.2, 11.0, 5'-H_b), 3.02 (3H, s, CH_3), 1.47 (3H, d, *J* 1.1, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 163.7 (C-4), 151.5 (C-2), 138.7, 136.7 (Bn), 135.7 (C-6), 130.9 (C-1''), 128.8, 128.5, 128.4, 127.6, 127.0 (Bn), 121.8 (C-2''), 111.9 (C-5), 85.1 (C-1'), 84.5 (C-3'), 84.0 (C-4'), 80.7 (C-2'), 73.7 (C-5'), 69.2, 67.7 (Bn), 38.9 (CH_3), 11.8 (CH_3).

Example 27

1-(3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-3-*C*-vinyl-β-D-arabinofuranosyl)thymine (26). A solution of nucleoside **25** (2.53 g, 4.66 mmol) in a mixture of ethanol (50 cm^3), water (50 cm^3) and 1 M aqueous sodium hydroxide (15 cm^3) was stirred under reflux for 16 h. The mixture was neutralised using dilute aqueous hydrochloric acid, the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 120 cm^3). The combined extract was washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 150 cm^3) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1) as eluent to give **26** as a white foam (1.61 g, 74%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 9.89 (1H, br s, NH), 7.50 (1H, d, *J* 1.1, 6-H), 7.41-7.26 (Bn), 6.28 (1H, d, *J* 2.8, 1'-H), 6.05 (1H, dd, *J* 11.1, 17.9, 1''-H), 5.58-5.50 (2H, m, 2''-H_a, 2''-H_b), 4.98 (1H, d, *J* 9.0, 2'-OH), 4.64-4.31 (6H, m, 2'-H, 4'-H, Bn), 3.73 (2H, m, 5'-H_a, 5'-H_b), 1.73 (1H, d, *J* 0.6, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 165.1 (C-4), 150.5 (C-2), 138.4, 138.0, 136.7 (C-6, Bn), 130.4 (C-1''), 128.8, 128.6, 128.5, 128.1, 128.0, 127.8 (Bn), 120.6 (C-2''), 108.1 (C-5), 88.6 (C-1'), 87.9 (C-3'), 87.2 (C-4'), 73.7 (C-2'), 71.8 (C-5'), 69.7, 66.3 (Bn), 12.3 (CH_3). Found: C, 66.8; H, 6.2; N, 5.9; $C_{26}H_{28}N_2O_6$ requires C, 67.2; H, 6.1; N, 6.0.

Example 28

1-(3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-3-*C*-hydroxymethyl-β-D-arabinofuranosyl)thymine (27). To a solution of nucleoside **26** (2.00 g, 4.31 mmol) in a mixture of THF (15 cm^3) and water (15 cm^3) was added sodium periodate (2.76 g, 12.9 mmol) and a 2.5% solution of osmium tetraoxide in *t*-butanol (w/w, 0.54 cm^3, 43 μmol). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 18 h, quenched with water (50 cm^3), and the mixture was

extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 100 cm^3). The combined extract was washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate (3 x 75 cm^3), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was redissolved in a mixture of THF (15 cm^3) and water (15 cm^3), and sodium borohydride (488 mg, 12.9 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 h, water (50 cm^3) was added, and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 100 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 75 cm^3) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (98:2, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **27** as a white foam (732 mg, 36%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 11.09 (1H, br s, NH), 7.41 (1H, d, *J* 1.0, 6-H), 7.38-7.26 (Bn), 6.16 (1H, d, *J* 2.6, 1'-H), 5.12 (1H, d, *J* 5.4, 2'-OH), 4.66-4.29 (6H, m, 2'-H, 4'-H, Bn), 4.02-3.96 (2H, m, 1''-H_a, 1''-H_b), 3.90 (1H, dd, *J* 7.2, 9.7, 5'-H_a), 3.79 (1H, dd, *J* 5.6, 9.7, 5'-H_b), 2.49 (1H, t, *J* 6.4, 1''-OH), 1.68 (3H, d, *J* 0.6, CH_3); δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 166.1 (C-4), 150.6 (C-2), 139.0, 137.9, 137.0 (C-6, Bn), 128.7, 128.6, 128.4, 128.3, 128.0 (Bn), 107.5 (C-5), 88.2 (C-1'), 88.1 (C-3'), 84.2 (C-4'), 73.7 (C-5'), 72.1 (C-2'), 69.3, 65.4 (Bn), 58.6 (C-1''), 12.3 (CH_3).

Example 29

***(1R,2R,4R,5S)*-1-Benzyloxy-2-benzyloxymethyl-4-(thymin-1-yl)-3,6-dioxabicyclo-[3.2.0]heptane (28).** A solution of compound **27** (2.26 g, 4.83 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (20 cm^3) was stirred at -40 °C and a solution of methanesulphonyl chloride (0.482 cm^3, 4.83 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (10 cm^3) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 17 h, water (5o cm^3) was added, and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 100 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 100 cm^3), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give an intermediate which after evaporation of the solvents was dissolved in anhydrous DMF (15 cm^3). This solution was added dropwise to a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (461 mg, 11.5 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (15 cm^3) at 0 °C. The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 30 min, then quenched with water (60 cm^3). After neutralisation using dilute aqueous hydrochloric acid, the mixture was dissolved in dichloromethane (150 cm^3), washed with saturated aqueous sodium

hydrogencarbonate (3 x 100 cm^3) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvents were evaporated and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **28** as a white foam (2.00 g, 93%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 9.13 (1H, br s, NH), 7.55 (1H, d, *J* 1.4, 6-H), 7.40-7.26 (Bn), 5.99 (1H, d, *J* 2.5, 1'-H), 5.30 (1H, d, *J* 2.7, 2'-H), 4.88-4.57 (6H, m, 1''-H_a, 1''-H_b, Bn), 4.22-4.19 (1H, m, 4'-H), 3.92 (1H, dd, *J* 6.2, 10.8, 5'-H_a), 3.82 (1H, dd, *J* 3.7, 10.8, 5'-H_b), 1.91 (3H, d, *J* 1.3, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 163.8 (C-4), 150.3 (C-2), 137.6 (C-6), 137.5, 137.0 (Bn), 128.7, 128.6, 128.2, 128.0, 127.8, 127.3 (Bn), 109.8 (C-5), 85.7 (C-3'), 84.1 (C-1'), 83.5 (C-4'), 79.7 (C-1''), 73.9 (C-2'), 73.6 (C-5'), 68.6, 67.8 (Bn), 12.4 (CH_3). FAB *m/z* 451 $[M+H]^+$, 473 $[M+Na]^+$. Found: C, 66.3; H, 5.9; N, 6.1; $C_{25}H_{26}N_2O_6$ requires C, 66.7; H, 5.8; N, 6.2%.

Example 30

***(1R,2R,4R,5S)*-1-Hydroxy-2-hydroxymethyl-4-(thymin-1-yl)-3,6-dioxabicyclo[3.2.0]-heptane (29).** To a stirred solution of nucleoside **28** (180 mg, 0.40 mmol) in ethanol (3 cm^3) was added 10% palladium hydroxide over carbon (90 mg). The mixture was degassed several times with argon and placed under a hydrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 6 h, then filtered through celite. The filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (96:4, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **29** as a white solid material (92 mg, 86%). δ_H (CD_3OD) 7.79 (1H, d, *J* 1.2, 6-H), 5.91 (1H, d, *J* 2.5, 1'-H), 4.96 (1H, d, *J* 2.5, 2'-H), 4.92 (1H, d, *J* 7.4, 1''-H_a), 4.58 (1H, dd, *J* 0.9, 7.4, 1''-H_b), 3.98 (1H, dd, *J* 7.3, 12.8, 5'-H_a), 3.87-3.82 (2H, m, 4'-H, 5'-H_b), 3.34 (2H, s, 3'-OH, 5'-OH), 1.87 (3H, d, *J* 1.3, CH_3). δ_C (CD_3OD) 166.5 (C-4), 152.1 (C-2), 140.1 (C-6), 110.1 (C-5), 91.2 (C-2'), 85.1 (C-1'), 84.0 (C-4'), 79.6 (C-3'), 78.6 (C-1''), 61.1 (C-5'), 12.3 (CH_3).

Example 31

***(1R,2R,4R,5S)*-1-(2-Cyanoethoxy(diisopropylamino)phosphinoxy)-2-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-4-(thymin-1-yl)-3,6-dioxabicyclo[3.2.0]heptane (30).** To a solution of diol **29** (250 mg, 0.925 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (4 cm^3) was added 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride (376 mg, 1.11 mmol) and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 h. The reaction was quenched with methanol (1.5 cm^3) and the mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. A solution of the residue in

dichloromethane (30 cm^3) was washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 20 cm^3), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (98:2, v/v) as eluent to give an intermediate which was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (7.0 cm^3). *N,N*-Diisopropylethylamine (0.64 cm^3, 3.70 mmol) followed by 2-cyanoethyl *N,N*-diisopropylphosphoramidochloridite (0.41 cm^3, 1.85 mmol) were added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 25 h. The reaction was quenched with methanol (3 cm^3), and the mixture was dissolved in ethylacetate (70 cm^3), washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 50 cm^3) and brine (3 x 50 cm^3), dried (Na_2SO_4), and was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using petroleum ether/dichloromethane/-ethylacetate/triethylamine (100:45:45:10, v/v/v/v) as eluent. The residue obtained was dissolved in toluene (2 cm^3) and precipitated under stirring from petroleum ether at -50 °C. After evaporation of the solvents, the residue was coevaporated with anhydrous acetonitrile (4 x 5 cm^3) to give **30** as a white foam (436 mg, 61%). ^{31}P NMR ($CDCl_3$) 146.6.

Example 32

3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-hydroxymethyl-1,2-*O*-isopropylidene-α-D-ribofuranose (31). To a solution of 3-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-hydroxymethyl-1,2-*O*-isopropylidene-α-D-ribofuranose (R. D. Youssefyeh, J. P. H. Verheyden and J. G. Moffatt, *J. Org. Chem.*, 1979, **44**, 1301) (20.1 g, 0.064 mol) in anhydrous DMF (100 cm^3) at -5 °C was added a suspension of NaH (60% in mineral oil (w/w), four portions during 1 h 30 min, total 2.85 g, 0.075 mol). Benzyl bromide (8.9 cm^3, 0.075 mol) was added dropwise and stirring at room temperature was continued for 3 h whereupon ice-cold water (50 cm^3) was added. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (4 x 100 cm^3) and the combined organic phase was dried (Na_2SO_4). After evaporation, the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography eluting with 5% EtOAc in petroleum ether (v/v) to yield compound **31** (18.5 g, 71%). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 138.0, 137.4, 128.5, 128.3, 128.0, 127.8, 127.6 (Bn), 113.5 ($C(CH_3)_2$), 104.4 (C-1), 86.5 (C-4), 78.8, 78.6 (Bn), 73.6, 72.6, 71.6 (C-2, C-3, C-5), 63.2, (C-1'), 26.7, 26.1 (CH_3).

Example 33

4-*C*-(Acetoxymethyl)-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-1,2-*O*-isopropylidene-α-*D*-ribofuranose (32). To a solution of furanose **31** (913 mg, 2.28 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (4.5 cm^3) was dropwise added acetic anhydride (1.08 cm^3, 11.4 mmol) and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 h. The reaction was quenched by addition of ice-cold water (50 cm^3) and extraction was performed with dichloromethane (3 x 50 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (2 x 50 cm^3), dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane as eluent to give compound **32** as a clear oil (911 mg, 90%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 7.34-7.25 (10 H, m, Bn), 5.77 (1 H, d, *J* 3.6, 1-H), 4.78-4.27 (8 H, m, Bn, H-5_a, H-5_b, H-3, H-2), 3.58 (1 H, d, *J* 10.3, H-1'$_a$), 3.48 (1 H, d, *J* 10.5, H-1'$_b$), 2.04 (3 H, s, $COCH_3$), 1.64 (3 H, s, CH_3), 1.34 (3 H, s, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 171.1 (C=O), 138.2, 137.9, 128.6, 128.1, 128.0, 128.0, 127,8 (Bn), 114.0 ($C(CH_3)_2$), 104.5 (C-1), 85.4 (C-4), 79.3, 78.6 (C-2, C-3), 73.7, 72.7, 71.2 (Bn, C-5), 64.9 (C-1'), 26.7, 26.3 ($C(CH_3)_2$), 21.0 ($COCH_3$). Found: C, 67.0; H, 6.5; $C_{25}H_{30}O_7$,1/4H_2O requires C, 67.2; H, 6.9%.

Example 34

4-*C*-(Acetoxymethyl)-1,2-di-*O*-acetyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-*D*-ribofuranose (33). A solution of furanose **32** (830 mg, 1.88 mmol) in 80% acetic acid (10 cm^3) was stirred at 90 °C for 4 h. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was coevaporated with ethanol (3 x 5 cm^3), toluene (3 x 5 cm^3) and anhydrous pyridine (3 x 5 cm^3), and was redissolved in anhydrous pyridine (3.7 cm^3). Acetic anhydride (2.85 cm^3) was added and the solution was stirred for 72 h at room temperature. The solution was poured into ice-cold water (20 cm^3) and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 20 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (2 x 20 cm^3), dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane as eluent to give **33** (β:α ~ 1:3) as an clear oil (789 mg, 86%). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 171.0, 170.3, 170.0, 169.3 (C=O), 138.1, 137.6, 136.3, 128.9, 128.6, 128.2, 128.0, 128.0, 127.9, 127.7, 124.0 (Bn), 97.8, 97.8 (C-1), 87.0, 85.0, 78.9, 74.5, 74.4, 73.8, 73.6, 72.0, 71.8, 71.0, 70.9, 64.6,

64.4 (C-2, C-3, C-4, Bn, C-5, C-1'), 21.0, 20.8, 20.6 ($COCH_3$). Found: C, 64.2; H, 6.3; $C_{26}H_{30}O_9$ requires C, 64.2; H, 6.2%.

Example 35

1-(4-*C*-(Acetoxymethyl)-2-*O*-acetyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)thymine (34). To a stirred solution of the anomeric mixture **33** (736 mg, 1.51 mmol) and thymine (381 mg, 3.03 mmol) in anhydrous acetonitrile (14.5 cm^3) was added *N,O*-bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (2.61 cm^3, 10.6 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at reflux for 1 h, then cooled to 0 °C. Trimethylsilyl triflate (0.47 cm^3, 2.56 mmol) was added dropwise under stirring and the solution was stirred at 65 °C for 2 h. The reaction was quenched with a cold saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (15 cm^3) and extraction was performed with dichloromethane (3 x 10 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with saturated aqueous solutions of sodium hydrogencarbonate (2 x 10 cm^3) and brine (2 x 10 cm^3), and was dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (98:2, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **34** as a white solid material (639 mg, 76%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 8.98 (1 H, br s, NH), 7.39-7.26 (11 H, m, Bn, 6-H), 6.22 (1 H, d, *J* 5.3, 1'-H), 5.42 (1 H, t, *J* 5.4, 2'-H), 4.63-4.43 (5H, m, 3'-H, Bn), 4.41 (1 H, d, *J* 12.2, 5'-H_a), 4.17 (1 H, d, *J* 12.1, 5'-H_b), 3.76 (1 H, d, *J* 10.2, 1''-H_a), 3.51 (1 H, d, *J* 10.4, 1''-H_b), 2.09 (3 H, s, $COCH_3$), 2.03 (3 H, s, $COCH_3$), 1.53 (3 H, d, *J* 0.9, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 170.8, 170.4 (C=O), 163.9 (C-4), 150.6 (C-2), 137.4 (C-6) 137.4, 136.1, 128.9, 128.8, 128.4, 128.2, 127,9 (Bn), 111.7 (C-5), 87.2, 87.2, 86.1 (C-1', C-3', C-4'), 77.6 (C-2'), 74.8, 73.9, 71.1, 63.8 (Bn, C-1'', C-5'), 20.9, 20.8 ($COCH_3$), 12.0 (CH_3). FAB-MS *m/z* 553 $[M+H]^+$. Found: C, 62.7; H, 5.9; N, 4.7; $C_{29}H_{32}N_2O_9$ requires C, 63.0; H, 5.8; N, 5.1%.

Example 36

1-(3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-(hydroxymethyl)-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)thymine (35). To a stirred solution of nucleoside **34** (553 mg, 1.05 mmol) in methanol (5.5 cm^3) was added sodium methoxide (287 mg, 5.25 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 min, then neutralised with dilute hydrochloric acid. The solvent was partly evaporated and extraction was performed with dichloromethane (2 x 20 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with saturated aqueous sodium

hydrogencarbonate (3 x 20 cm^3) and was dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give **35** as a white solid material (476 mg, 97%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 7.47 (1 H, d, *J* 1.0 6-H), 7.36-7.22 (10 H, m, Bn), 6.07 (1 H, d, *J* 3.8, 1'-H), 4.87 (1 H, d, *J* 11.7, Bn), 4.55 (1 H, d, *J* 11.7, Bn), 4.50-4.32 (4 H, m, Bn, 2'-H, 3'-H), 3.84-3.53 (4 H, m, 5'-H_a, 5'-H_b, 1''-H_a, 1''-H_b), 1.50 (3 H, d, *J* 1.1, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 164.3 (C-4), 151.3 (C-2), 137.6 (C-6) 136.4, 136.3, 128.8, 128.6, 128.4, 128.3, 127,9 (Bn), 111.1 (C-5), 91.1, 91.0, 88.1 (C-1', C-3', C-4'), 77.4 (C-2'), 74.8, 73.8, 71.4, 63,2 (Bn, C-5', C-1''), 12.0 (CH_3). FAB-MS *m/z* 491 $[M+Na]^+$. Found: C, 63.4; H, 6.0; N, 5.5; $C_{25}H_{28}N_2O_7$,1/4H_2O requires C, 63.5; H, 6.1; N, 5.9%.

Example 37

Intermediate 35A. A solution of nucleoside **35** (225 mg, 0.48 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (1.3 cm^3) was stirred at 0 °C and *p*-toluenesulphonyl chloride (118 mg, 0.62 mmol) was added in small portions. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 16 h and additional *p*-toluenesulphonyl chloride (36 mg, 0.19 mmol) was added. After stirring for another 4 h and addition of ice-cold water (15 cm^3), extraction was performed with dichloromethane (2 x 15 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 15 cm^3) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give a intermediate **35A** (140 mg) which was used without further purification in the next step.

Example 38

***(1S,3R,4R,7S)*-7-Benzyloxy-1-benzyloxymethyl-3-(thymin-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo-[2.2.1]heptane (36).** Intermediate **35A** (159 mg) was dissolved in anhydrous DMF (0.8 cm^3). The solution was added dropwise to a stirred suspension of 60% sodium hydride in mineral oil (w/w, 32 mg, 0.80 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (0.8 cm^3) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 72 h and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (10 cm^3), washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 5 cm^3) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give the bicyclic nucleoside **36** as a white solid material (65.7 mg, 57%). δ_H

($CDCl_3$) 9.24 (1 H, br s, NH), 7.49 (1 H, s, 6-H), 7.37-7.26 (10 H, m, Bn), 5.65 (1 H, s, 1'-H), 4.70-4.71 (5 H, m, Bn, 2'-H), 4.02-3.79 (5 H, m, 3'-H, 5'-H_a, 5'-H_b, 1''-H_a, 1''-H_b), 1.63 (3 H, s, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 164.3 (C-4), 150.1 (C-2), 137.7, 137.1 (Bn), 135.0 (C-6), 128.8, 128.7, 128.4, 128.0, 127.9 (Bn), 110.4 (C-5), 87.5, 87.3 (C-1', C-3'), 76.7, 75.8, 73.9, 72.3, 72.1 (Bn, C-5', C-2', C-4'), 64.5 (C-1''), 12.3 (CH_3). FAB-MS *m/z* 451 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 39

***(1S,3R,4R,7S)*-7-Hydroxy-1-hydroxymethyl-3-(thymin-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]-heptane (37).** A solution of nucleoside **36** (97 mg, 0.215 mmol) in ethanol (1.5 cm^3) was stirred at room temperature and 20% palladium hydroxide over carbon (50 mg) was added. The mixture was degassed several times with argon and placed in a hydrogen atmosphere with a baloon. After stirring for 4 h, the mixture was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane-methanol (97:3, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **37** as a white solid material (57 mg, 98%). δ_H ($(CD_3)_2SO$) 11.33 (1H, br s, NH), 7.62 (1H, d, *J* 1.1 Hz, 6-H), 5.65 (1H, d, *J* 4.4 Hz, 3'-OH), 5.41 (1H, s, 1'-H), 5.19 (1H, t, *J* 5.6 Hz, 5'-OH), 4.11 (1H, s, 2'-H), 3.91 (1H, d, *J* 4.2 Hz, 3'-H), 3.82 (1H, d, *J* 7.7 Hz, 1''-H_a), 3.73 (1H, s, H'-5_a), 3.76 (1H, s, 5'-H_b), 3.63 (1H, d, *J* 7.7 Hz, 1''-H_b), 1.78 (3H, d, *J* 0.7 Hz, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 166.7 (C-4), 152.1 (C-2), 137.0 (C-6), 110.9 (C-5), 90.5, 88.4 (C-1', C-4'), 80.9, 72.5, 70.4 (C-2', C-3', C-5'), 57.7 (C-1''), 12.6 (CH_3). EI-MS *m/z* 270 $[M]^+$.

Example 40

***(1R,3R,4R,7S)*-1-(4,4'-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-7-hydroxy-3-thymin-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (38).** To a solution of nucleoside **37** (1.2 g, 4.44 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (5 cm^3) was added 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride (2.37 g, 7.0 mmol) at 0°C. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 h whereupon the reaction was quenched with ice-cold water (10 cm^3) and extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 15 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with saturated aqueous solutions of sodium hydrogen carbonate (3 x 10 cm^3), brine (2 x 10 cm^3) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (98:2, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **38** as a white solid material (2.35 g, 93%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 9.89 (1H, br s, NH), 7.64 (1H, s, 6-H), 7.47-7.13 (9H, m, DMT), 6.96-6.80 (4H, m,

DMT), 5.56 (1H, s, 1'-H), 4.53 (1H, br s, 2'-H), 4.31 (1H, m, 3'-H), 4.04-3.75 (9H, m, 1''-H_a, 1''-H_b, 3'-OH, OCH_3), 3.50 (2H, br s, 5'-H_a, 5'-H_b), 1.65 (3H, s, CH_3). $\delta_C(CDCl_3)$ 164.47 (C-4), 158.66 (DMT), 150.13 (C-2), 144.56, 135.46, 135.35, 134.78, 130.10, 129.14, 128.03, 127.79, 127.05 (C-6, DMT), 113.32, 113.14 (DMT), 110.36 (C-5), 89.17, 88.16, 87.05 (C-1', C-4', DMT), 79.36, 71.81, 70.25, 58.38 (C-2', C-3', C-5', C-1''), 55.22 (OCH_3), 12.57 (CH_3). FAB-MS *m/z* 595 $[M+Na]^+$, 573 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 41

(*1R,3R,4R,7S*)-7-(2-Cyanoethoxy(diisopropylamino)phosphinoxy)-1-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-3-(thymin-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (39). To a solution of nucleoside **38** (2.21 g, 3.86 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (6 cm^3) at room temperature was added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (4 cm^3) and 2-cyanoethyl *N,N*-diisopropylphosphoramidochloridite (1 cm^3, 4.48 mmol) and stirring was continued for 1 h. MeOH (2 cm^3) was added, and the mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (10 cm^3) and washed successively with saturated aqueous solutions of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 5 cm^3) and brine (3 x 5 cm^3) and was dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by basic alumina column chromatography with dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give **39** as a white foam. This residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (2 cm^3) and the product was precipitated from petroleum ether (100 cm^3, cooled to -30°C) under vigorous stirring. The precipitate was collected by filtration, and was dried to give nucleoside **39** as a white solid material (2.1 g, 70%). $\delta_P(CDCl_3)$ 149.06, 148.74. FAB-MS *m/z* 795 $[M+Na]^+$, 773 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 42

1-(2-*O*-Acetyl-4-*C*-acetoxymethyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)uracil (40). To a stirred solution of the anomeric mixture **33** (3.0 g, 6.17 mmol) and uracil (1.04 g, 9.26 mmol) in anhydrous acetonitrile (65 cm^3) was added *N,O*-bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (9.16 cm^3, 37.0 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 h at room temperature and cooled to 0°C. Trimethylsilyl triflate (1.8 cm^3, 10.0 mmol) was added dropwise and the solution was stirred at 60°C for 2 h. The reaction was quenched by addition of a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (10 cm^3) at 0°C and extraction was performed with dichloromethane (3 x 20 cm^3). The combined

organic phase was washed with brine (2 x 20 cm^3) and was dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvents were removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **40** as a white solid material (2.5 g, 75%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 9.57 (1H, br s, NH), 7.63 (1H, d, *J* 8.2, 6-H), 7.40-7.24 (10H, m, Bn), 6.18 (1H, d, *J* 4.5, 1'-H), 5.39-5.32 (2H, m, 2'-H, 5-H), 4.61 (1H, d, *J* 11.6, Bn), 4.49-4.40 (5H, m, 3'-H, Bn, 1''-H_a), 4.37 (1H, d, *J* 12.3, 1''-H_b), 3.76 (1H, d, *J* 10.1, 5'-H_a), 3.49 (1H, d, *J* 10.1, 5'-H_b), 2.09 (s, 3H, $COCH_3$), 2.04 (3H, s, $COCH_3$). δc ($CDCl_3$) 170.47, 169.94 (C=O), 163.32 (C-4), 150.30 (C-2), 140.24 (C-6), 137.15, 136.95, 128.65, 128.52, 128.32, 128.19, 128.02, 127.77 (Bn), 102.57 (C-5), 87.41, 86.14 (C-1', C-4'), 77.09, 74.84, 74.51, 73.75, 70.60, 63.73 (C-2', C-3', C-5', C-1'', Bn), 20.79, 20.68 ($COCH_3$). FAB-MS *m/z* 539 $[M]^+$.

Example 43

1-(3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-hydroxymethyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)uracil (41). To a stirred solution of nucleoside **40** (2.0 g, 3.7 mmol) in methanol (25 cm^3) was added sodium methoxide (0.864 g, 95%, 16.0 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 min and neutralised with 20% aqueous hydrochloric acid. The solvent was partly evaporated and the residue was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 50 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 20 cm^3) and was dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (98.5:1.5, v/v) as eluent to give **41** as a white solid material (1.58 g, 95%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 9.95 (1H, br s, NH), 7.69 (d, *J* 8.1, 6-H), 7.35-7.17 (10H, m, Bn), 6.02 (1H, d, *J* 2.3, 1'-H), 5.26 (1H, d, *J* 8.1, 5-H), 4.80 (1H, d, *J* 11.7, Bn), 4.47 (1H, d, *J* 11.7, Bn), 4.45-4.24 (4H, m, Bn, 2'-H, 3'-H), 3.81 (1H, d, *J* 11.9, 1''-H_a), 3.69 (2H, br s, 2'-OH, 1''-OH), 3.67 (2H, m, 5'-H_a, 1''-H_b), 3.48 (1H, d, *J* 10.3, 5'-H_b). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 163.78 (C-4), 150.94 (C-2), 140.61 (C-6), 137.33, 137.22, 128.59, 128.18, 128.01 (Bn), 102.16 (C-5), 91.46, 88.36 (C-1', C-4'), 76.73, 74.66, 73.71, 73.29, 70.81, 62.81 (C-2', C-3', C-5', C-1'', Bn). FAB-MS *m/z* 455 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 44

Intermediate 42. A solution of nucleoside **41** (1.38 g, 3.0 mmol), anhydrous pyridine (2 cm^3) and anhydrous dichloromethane (6 cm^3) was stirred at -10°C and *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (0.648 g, 3.4 mmol) was added in small portions during 1 h. The solution was stirred at -10°C for 3 h. The reaction was quenched by addition of ice-cold water (10 cm^3) and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 50 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 20 cm^3) and was dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give intermediate **42** (0.9 g) which was used without further purification in the next step.

Example 45

***(1S,3R,4R,7S)*-7-Benzyloxy-1-benzyloxymethyl-3-(uracil-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]-heptane (43).** Compound **42** (0.7 g) was dissolved in anhydrous DMF (3 cm^3) and a 60% suspension of sodium hydride (w/w, 0.096 g, 24 mmol) was added in four portions during 10 min at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 h. The reaction was quenched with methanol (10 cm^3), and the solvents were removed under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (20 cm^3), washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 6 cm^3) and was dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/ethanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **43** (0.30 g, 60%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 9.21 (1H, br s, NH), 7.70 (1H, d, *J* 8.2, 6-H), 7.37-7.24 (10H, m, Bn), 5.65 (1H, s, 1'-H), 5.52 (1H, d, *J* 8.2, 5-H), 4.68-4.45 (5H, m, 2'-H, Bn), 4.02-3.55 (5H, m, 3'-H, 5'-H_a, 1''-H_a, 5'-H_b, 1''-H_b). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 163.33 (C-4), 149.73 (C-2), 139.18 (C-6), 137.46, 136.81, 128.58, 128.54, 128.21, 128.10, 127.79, 127.53 (Bn), 101.66 (C-5), 87.49, 87.33 (C-1', C-4'), 76.53, 75.71, 73.77, 72.33, 72.00, 64.35 (C-2', C-3', C-5', C-1'', Bn). FAB-MS *m/z* 459 $[M+Na]^+$.

Example 46

***(1S,3R,4R,7S)*-7-Hydroxy-1-hydroxymethyl-3-(uracil-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]-heptane (44).** To a solution of compound **43** (0.35 g, 0.8 mmol) in absolute ethanol (2 cm^3) was added 20% palladium hydroxide over carbon (0.37 g) and the mixture was

degassed several times with hydrogen and stirred under the atmosphere of hydrogen for 4h. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloramethane/methanol (9:1, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **44** as a white solid material (0.16 g, 78%). δ_H (CD_3OD) 7.88 (1H, d, *J* 8.1, 6-H), 5.69 (1H, d, *J* 8.1, 5-H), 5.55 (1H, s, 1'-H), 4.28 (1H, s, 2'-H), 4.04 (1H, s, 3'-H), 3.96 (1H, d, *J* 7.9, 1''-H_a), 3.91 (2H, s, 5'-H), 3.76 (1H, d, *J* 7.9, 1''-H_b). δ_C (CD_3OD) 172.95 (C-4), 151.82 (C-2), 141.17 (C-6), 101.97 (C-5), 90.52, 88.50 (C-1', C-4'), 80.88, 72.51, 70.50, 57.77 (C-2', C-3', C-5', C-1''). FAB-MS *m/z* 257 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 47

***(1R,3R,4R,7S)*-1-(4,4'-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-7-hydroxy-3-(uracil-1-yl)-2,5-dioxa-bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (45).** To a solution of compound **44** (0.08 g, 0.31 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (0.5 cm^3) was added 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride (0.203 g, 0.6 mmol) at 0°C and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 h. The reaction was quenched with ice-cold water (10 cm^3) and extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 4 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with saturated aqueous solutions of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 3 cm^3) and brine (2 x 3 cm^3) and was dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (98:2, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **45** as a white solid material (0.12 g, 69%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 9.25 (1H, br s, NH), 7.93 (1H, d, *J* 7.2, 6-H), 7.50-7.15 (9H, m, DMT), 6.88-6.78 (4H, m, DMT), 5.63 (1H, s, 1'-H), 5.59 (1H, d, *J* 8.0, 5-H), 4.48 (1H, s, 2'-H), 4.26 (1H, s, 3'-H), 3.88 (1H, d, *J* 8.1, 1''-H_a), 3.85-3.55 (7H, m, 1''-H_b, OCH_3), 3.58-3.40 (2H, m, 5'-H_a, 5'-H_b). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 164.10 (C-4), 158.60 (DMT), 150.45 (C-2), 147.53 (DMT), 144.51 (C-6), 139.72, 135.49, 135.37, 130.20, 129.28, 128.09, 127.85, 127.07 (DMT), 113.39, 113.17 (DMT), 101.79 (C-5), 88.20, 87.10, 86.87 (C-1', C-4', DMT), 79.25, 71.79, 69.70, 58.13 (C-2', C-3', C-5', C-1''), 55.33 (OCH_3). FAB-MS *m/z* 559 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 48

***(1R,3R,4R,7S)*-7-(2-Cyanoethoxy(diisopropylamino)posphinoxy)-1-(4,4'-dimethoxy-trityloxymethyl)-3-(uracil-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (46).** To a solution of compound **45** (0.07 g, 0.125 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (2 cm^3) at room

temperature was added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.1 cm^3) and 2-cyanoethyl *N,N*-diisopropylphosphoramidochloridite (0.07 cm^3, 0.32 mmol). After stirring for 1 h, the reaction was quenched with MeOH (2 cm^3), and the resulting mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (5 cm^3) and washed successively with saturated aqueous solutions of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 2 cm^3) and brine (3 x 2 cm^3), and was dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give a white foam. This foam was dissolved in dichloromethane (2 cm^3) and the product was precipitated from petroleum ether (10 cm^3, cooled to -30°C) under vigorous stirring. The precipitate was collected by filtration and was dried to give compound **46** as a white solid material (0.055 g, 58%). δ_p ($CDCl_3$) 149.18, 149.02.

Example 49

9-(2-*O*-Acetyl-4-*C*-acetoxymethyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)-2-*N*-isobutyryl-guanine (47). To a stirred suspension of the anomeric mixture **33** (1.28 g, 5.6 mmol) and 2-*N*-isobutyrylguanine (1.8 g, 3.7 mmol) in anhydrous dichloroethane (60 cm^3) was added *N,O*-bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (4 cm^3, 16.2 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at reflux for 1 h. Trimethylsilyl triflate (1.5 mL, 8.28 mmol) was added dropwise at 0 °C and the solution was stirred at reflux for 2 h. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature during 1.5 h. After dilution to 250 cm^3 by addition of dichloromethane, the mixture was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (200 cm^3) and water (250 cm^3). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using 1.25% (200 cm^3) and 1.5% (750 cm^3) of methanol in dichloromethane (v/v) as eluents to give 2.10 g (87%) of a white solid that according to ^{1}H-NMR analysis consisted of three isomers (ratio: 12.5:2.5:1). The main product formed in that conditions is expected to be compound **47** (P. Garner, S. Ramakanth, *J. Org. Chem.* **1988**, 53, 1294; H. Vorbruggen, K. Krolikiewicz, B. Bennua, *Chem. Ber.* **1981**, 114, 1234). The individual isomers were not isolated and mixture was used for next step. For main product **47**: δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 12.25 (br s, NHCO), 9.25 (br s, NH), 7.91 (s, 8-H) 7.39-7.26 (m, Bn), 6.07 (d, *J* 4.6, 1'-H), 5.80 (dd, *J* 5.8, *J* 4.7, 2'-H), 4.72 (d, *J* 5.9, 3'-H), 4.59-4.43 (m, Bn, 1''-H_a), 4.16 (d, *J* 12.1, 1''-H_b), 3.70 (d, *J* 10.1, 5'-H_a), 3.58 (d, *J* 10.1, 5'-H_b), 2.65 (m, CHCO), 2.05 (s, $COCH_3$), 2.01 (s, $COCH_3$), 1.22 (d, *J* 6.7, CH_3CH), 1.20 (d, *J* 7.0, CH_3CH). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 178.3 (COCH), 170.6, 179.8

($COCH_3$), 155.8, 148.2, 147.6 (guanine), 137.6, 137.2 (guanine, Bn), 128.5, 128.4, 128.2, 128.1, 128.0, 127.8, 127.7 (Bn), 121.2 (guanine), 86.2, 86.0 (C-1', C-4'), 77.8 (C-3'), 74.9, 74.5, 73.7, 70.4 (Bn, C-2', C-5'), 63.5 (C-1''), 36.3 (COCH), 20.8, 20.6 ($COCH_3$), 19.0 (CH_3CH). For the mixture: FAB-MS *m/z* 648 $[M+H]^+$, 670 $[M+Na]^+$. Found: C, 60.8; H, 6.0; N, 10.4; $C_{33}H_{36}N_5O_9$ requires C, 61.3; H, 5.6; N, 10.8%.

Example 50

9-(3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-hydroxymethyl-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)-2-*N*-isobutyrylguanine (48). A solution of the mixture described in Example 49 containing compound **47** (2.10 g, 3.25 mmol) in THF/Pyridine/methanol (2:3:4, v/v/v) (40 cm^3) was cooled to -10 °C and sodium methoxide (320 mg, 5.93 mmol) was added to the stirred solution. The reaction mixture was stirred at 10 °C for 30 min and neutralised with 2 cm^3 of acetic acid. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was twice extracted in a system of dichloromethane/water (2 x 100 cm^3). The organic fractions were combined and evaporated under reduced pressure. After co-evaporation with toluene, the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography in a gradient (2-7 %) of methanol in dichloromethane (v/v) to give a white solid material (1.62 g). According to ^{1}H-NMR it consisted of three isomers (ratio: 13.5:1.5:1). For main product **48**: δ_H (CD_3OD) 8.07 (s, 8-H) 7.36-7.20 (m, Bn), 6.05 (d, *J* 3.9, 1'-H), 4.81 (d, *J* 11.5, Bn), 4.75 (m, 2'-H), 4.56 (d, *J* 11.5, Bn), 4.51-4.43 (m, Bn, 3'-H), 3.83 (d, *J* 11.7, 1''-H_a), 3.65 (d, *J* 11.7, 1''-H_b), 3.64 (d, *J* 10.6, 5'-H_a), 3.57 (d, *J* 10.3, 5'-H_b), 2.69 (m, CHCO), 1.20 (6 H, d, *J* 6.8, CH_3CH). δ_C (CD_3OD) 181.6 (COCH), 157.3, 150.2, 149.5 (guanine), 139.4, 139.3, 139.0 (guanine, Bn), 129.5, 129.4, 129.3, 129.2, 129.1, 129.0, 128.9, 128.8 (Bn), 121.2 (guanine), 90.7, 89.6 (C-1', C-4'), 79.2 (C-3'), 75.8, 74.5, 74.3, 72.2 (Bn, C-2', C-5'), 63.1 (C-1''), 36.9 (COCH), 19.4 (CH_3CH), 19.3 (CH_3CH). For the mixture: FAB-MS *m/z* 564 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 51

Intermediate 49. A solution of the mixture described in Example 50 containing **48** (1.6 g) in anhydrous pyridine (6 cm^3) was stirred at -20 °C and *p*-toluenesulphonyl chloride (0.81 g, 4.27 mmol) was added. The solution was stirred for 1 h at -20 °C and for 2 h at -25 °C. Then the mixture was diluted to 100 cm^3 by addition of dichloromethane and immediately washed with water (2 x 100 cm^3). The organic phase was separated

and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol as eluent (1-2%, v/v) to give intermediate **49** (980 mg). After elution of compound **49** from the column, the starting mixture containing **48** (510 mg) was eluted using 8% methanol in dichloromethane (v/v) as eluent. This material was concentrated, dried under reduced pressure and treated in the same manner as described above to give additionally 252 mg of the intermediate. The intermediate (1.23 g) was purified by silica gel HPLC (PrepPak Cartridge packed by Porasil, 15-20 μm, 125A, flow rate 60 cm^3/min, eluent 0-4% of methanol in dichloromethane (v/v), 120 min). Fractions containing intermediate **49** were pooled and concentrated to give white solid (1.04 g). According to ^{1}H-NMR it consisted of two main products, namely 1''-*O* and 2'-*O* monotosylated derivatives in a ratio of ~ 2:1. FAB-MS *m/z* 718 $[M+H]^+$. Found C, 60.4; H, 5.8; N, 9.3; $C_{36}H_{39}N_5O_9S$ requires C, 60.2; H, 5.5; N, 9.8%.

Example 52

(*1S,3R,4R,7S*)-7-Benzyloxy-1-benzyloxymethyl-3-(2-*N*-isobutyrylguanin-9-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (50). To a solution of intermediate **49** (940 mg) in anhydrous THF (20 cm^3) was added a 60% suspension of sodium hydride (w/w, 130 mg, 3.25 mmol) and the mixture was stirred for 1h at room temperature. Acetic acid (0.25 mL) was added and the mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (100 cm^3) and was washed with water (2 x 100 cm^3). The organic phase was separated and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using methanol/dichloromethane (1-1.5%, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **50** as a white solid material (451 mg, 57%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 12.25 (1H, br s, NHCO), 10.12 (1H, br s, NH), 7.84 (1H, s, 8-H), 7.31-7.15 (10H, m, Bn), 5.72 (1H, s, 1'-H), 4.60-4.46 (5H, m, Bn, 2'-H), 4.14 (1H, s, 3'-H), 4.02 (1H, d, *J* 7.9, 1''-H_a), 3.85 (1H, d, *J* 7.9, 1''-H_b), 3.78 (2H, s, 5'-H), 2.81 (1H, m, CHCO), 1.24 (3H, d, *J* 6.8, CH_3CH), 1.22 (3H, d, *J* 6.4, CH_3CH). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 179.5 (COCH), 155.6, 148.1, 147.3 (guanine), 137.3, 136.9, 136.0 (guanine, Bn), 128.4, 128.3, 127.9, 127.8, 127.5, 127.4 (Bn), 121.2 (guanine), 87.1, 86.2 (C-1', C-4'), 77.0 (C-3'), 73.6, 72.5, 72.1 (Bn, C-2', C-5'), 64.9 (C-1''), 36.1 (COCH), 19.0 (CH_3CH), 18.9 (CH_3CH). FAB-MS *m/z* 546 $[M+H]^+$. Found: C, 63.3; H, 5.9; N, 12.5; $C_{29}H_{30}N_5O_6$ requires C, 64.0; H, 5.6; N, 12.9%.

Alternative preparation of compound 50. G1AQ. To a suspension of compound **78** (1.5g, 2.51 mmol), N2-isobutirylguanine (0.93 g, 4.06 mmol) in dry DCM (50 mL) was added BSA (N,O-bistrimethylsilylacetamide; 3.33 mL, 13.5 mmol) and the mixture was refluxed for 2 h. Trimethylsilyl triflate (1.25 mL, 6.9 mmol) was added to the mixture and refluxing was continuing for additional 2 h. The mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature, diluted by 200 mL of DCM and washed by saturated aq. $NaHCO_3$ and water. Chromatography at silica gel column (1- 2.5 % of CH_3OH in dichloromethane) yielded 1.05g (55%) of the desired isomer **G1AQ** and 380 mg of isomers with higher mobility which was converted to **G1AQ** by repetition of the procedure described above. Ammonium hydroxide (12 mL of 25% aq.solution) was added to a solution of **G1AQ** (1.05 g in 12 mL of methanol) and the mixture was stirred for 1hr at room temperature. After concentration, the product was purified by silica gel column chromatography (1-3 % CH_3OH in dichloromethane) to give 700 mg **G3** as a white solid material. 700 mg of **G3** in anhydroux THF (15 mL) was treated with NaH (225 mg of 60% suspension in mineral oil). 30 min later, the reaction was quenched by addition of 1.25 mL of acetic acid, and the mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane, washed by $NaHCO_3$ and water and purified by silica gel chromatography in gradient 0.5-3% methanol/DCM. Yield 400 mg (75%) of **50**.

Example 53

***(1S,3R,4R,7S)*-7-Hydroxy-1-hydroxymethyl-3-(2-*N*-isobutyrylguanin-9-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (51).** A mixture of nucleoside **50** (717 mg, 1.31 mmol) and 10% palladium over carbon (500 mg) was suspended in methanol (8 cm^3) at room temperature. The mixture was degassed several times under reduced pressure and placed under a hydrogen atmosphere. After stirring for 24 h the mixture was purified by silica gel column chromatography using methanol/dichloromethane (8-20%, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **51** as a glass-like solid (440 mg, 92%). δ_H (CD_3OD) 8.12 (1H, br s, 8-H), 5.86 (1H, s, 1'-H), 4.50 (1H, s, 2'-H), 4.30 (1H, s, 3'-H), 4.05 (1H, d, *J* 8.0, 1''-H_a), 3.95 (2H, s, 5'-H), 3.87 (1H, d, *J* 7.9, 1''-H_b), 2.74 (1H, m, CHCO), 1.23 (6H, d, *J* 6.9, CH_3CH). δ_C (CD_3OD, signals from the carbohydrate part) 90.2, 87.6 (C-1', C-4'), 81.1 (C-3'), 72.9, 71.3 (C-2', C-5'), 58.2 (C-1''), 37.1 (COCH), 19.5 (CH_3CH). FAB-MS *m/z* 366 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 54

(*1R,3R,4R,7S*)-1-(4,4'-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-7-hydroxy-3-(2-*N*-isobutyrylguanin-9-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (52). A mixture of compound **51** (440 mg, 1.21 mmol) and 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride (573 mg, 1.69 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous pyridine (7 cm^3) and was stirred at room temperature for 4 h. The mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure to give an oil. Extraction was performed in a system of dichloromethane/water (1:1, v/v, 40 cm^3). The organic phase was separated and concentrated to give a solution in a minimal volume of dichloromethane containing 0.5% of pyridine (v/v) which was applied to a silica gel column equilibrated by the same solvent. The product was eluted in gradient concentrations of methanol (0.6 - 2%, v/v) in dichloromethane containing 0.5% of pyridine (v/v) to give compound **52** as a white solid material (695 mg, 86%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 12.17 (1H, br s, NHCO), 10.09 (1H, br s, NH), 7.87 (1H, s, 8-H), 7.42-6.72 (13H, m, DMT), 5.69 (1H, s, 1'-H), 4.59 (1H, s, 2'-H), 4.50 (1H, s, 3'-H), 3.98 (1H, d, *J* 8.1, 1''-H_a), 3.69-3.39 (9H, m, DMT, 5'-H, 1''-H_b), 2.72 (1H, m, CHCO), 1.17 (6H, d, *J* 6.8, CH_3CH). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 179.8 (COCH), 158.8, 144.5, 135.6, 135.5, 130.1, 128.1, 127.7, 126.9, 113.2 (DMT), 155.8, 147.9, 147.5, 137.0, 120.8 (guanine), 87.6, 86.4, 86.1 (C-1', C-4', DMT), 79.7 (C-3'), 72.6, 71.4 (C-2', C-5'), 59.8 (C-1''), 55.2 (DMT), 36.1 (COCH), 19.1, 18.8 (CH_3CH). FAB-MS *m/z* 668 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 55

(*1R,3R,4R,7S*)-7-(2-Cyanoethoxy(diisopropylamino)phosphinoxy)-1-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-3-(2-*N*-isopropyonylguanin-9-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (53). Compound **52** (670 mg, 1.0 mmol) was at room temperature dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (5 cm^3) containing *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.38 cm^3, 4 mmol). 2-Cyanoethyl *N,N*-diisopropylphosphoramidochloridite (0.36 cm^3, 2.0 mmol) was added drop-wise with stirring. After 5 h, methanol (2 cm^3) was added and the mixture was diluted to 100 cm^3 by addition of dichloromethane and washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrocarbonate (50 cm^3). The organic phase was separated and the solvent was removed by evaporation under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in the minimun amount of dichloromethane/petroleum ether (1:1, v/v) containing 0.5% pyridine (v/v) and was applied to a column packed with silica gel equilibrated by the same solvent mixture. The column was washed by dichloromethane/petroleum/pyridine (75:25:0.5, v/v/v, 250 cm^3) and the product was

eluted using a gradient of methanol in dichloromethane (0-1%, v/v) containing 0.5% pyridine (v/v). The fractions containing the main product were evaporated and co-evaporated with toluene. The residue was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (5 cm^3) and precipitated from petroleum ether (100 cm^3) to give compound **53** as a white solid material (558 mg, 64%) after filtration and drying. δ_P ($CDCl_3$) 148.17, 146.07. FAB-MS *m/z* 868 $[M+1]^+$.

Example 56

1-(2-*O*-Acetyl-4-*C*-acetoxymethyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)-4-*N*-benzoyl-cytosine (54). To a stirred solution of the anomeric mixture **33** (4.0 g, 8.22 mmol) and 4-*N*-benzoylcytosine (2.79 g, 13.0 mmol) was added *N,O*-bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (8.16 cm^3, 33.0 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 h at room temperature and cooled to 0 °C. Trimethylsilyl triflate (3.0 cm^3, 16.2 mmol) was added dropwise and the mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 2 h. Saturated aqueous solutions of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 20 cm^3) and brine (2 x 20 cm^3) were successively added, and the separated organic phase was dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give compound **54** as a white solid material (3.9 g, 74%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$), 8.28 (1H, d, *J* 7.5, 6-H), 7.94-7.90 (2H, m, Bz), 7.65-7.25 (13H, m, Bn, Bz), 7.16 (1H, d, *J* 7.1, 5-H), 6.22 (1H, d, *J* 2.8, 1'-H), 5.51 (1H, dd, *J* 2.8, 5.8, 2'-H), 4.62 (1H, d, *J* 11.6, Bn), 4.51 (1H, d, *J* 12.3, 1''-H_a), 4.49-4.34 (4H, m, 3'-H, Bn), 4.21 (1H, d, *J* 12.3, 1''-H_b), 3.85 (1H, d, *J* 10.3, 5'-H_a), 3.47 (1H, d, *J* 10.3, 5'-H_b), 2.13 (3H, s, $COCH_3$), 2.06 (3H, s, $COCH_3$). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 170.52, 169.61 (C=O), 166.83, 162.27 (C-4, C=O), 154.26 (C-2), 145.26 (C-6), 137.25, 136.93, 133.18, 129.0, 128.75, 128.51, 128,45, 128.18, 128.10, 127.89, 127.71 (Bn, Bz), 96.58 (C-5), 89.42, 86.52 (C-1', C-4'), 76.21, 75.10, 74.17, 73.70, 69.70, 63.97 (C-2', C-3', Bn, C-5', C-1''), 20.82 ($COCH_3$). FAB-MS *m/z* 664 $[M+Na]^+$, 642 $[M+H]^+$. Found: C, 65.0; H, 5.7, N, 6.5; $C_{35}H_{35}N_3O_9$ requires C, 65.5; H, 5.5; N, 6.5%.

Example 57

1-(3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-hydroxymethyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)-4-*N*-benzoylcytosine (55). To a stirred solution of nucleoside **54** (3.4 g, 5.3 mmol) in methanol (20 cm^3) was added sodium methoxide (0.663 g, 11.66 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room

temperature for 10 min and then neutralised with 20% aqueous hydrochloric acid. The solvent was partly evaporated and the residue was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 50 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 20 cm^3) and was dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (98.5:1.5, v/v) as eluent to give compound **55** as a white solid material (1.6 g, 54%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 9.95 (1H, br s, NH), 8.33 (1H, d, *J* 7.4, 6-H), 7.98 (2H, m, Bz), 7.60-7.12 (14H, m, Bn, Bz, 5-H), 6.17 (1H, d, *J* 1.6, 1'-H), 4.78 (1H, d, *J* 11.8, Bn), 4.48-4.27 (5H, m, Bn, 2'-H, 3'-H), 3.85 (1H, d, *J* 11.8, 5'-H_a), 3.66-3.61 (2H, m, 5'-H_b, 1''-H_a), 3.47 (1H, d, *J* 10.4, 1''-H_b). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 167.5, 162.31 (C-4, C=O), 155.36 (C-2), 145.34 (C-6), 137.49, 137.08, 133.09, 133.01, 128.94, 128.67, 128.48, 128.30, 128.01, 127.90, 127.80 (Bn, Bz), 96.53 (C-5), 93.97, 89.35 (C-1', C-4'), 76.06, 75.28, 73.70, 72.76, 70.26, 62.44 (C-2', C-3', Bn, C-5', C-1''). FAB-MS *m/z* 558 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 58

Intermediate 56. A solution of nucleoside **55** (2.2 g, 3.94 mmol) in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (60 cm^3) was stirred at -20 °C and a suspension of 60% sodium hydride in mineral oil (w/w, 0.252 g, 6.30 mmol) was added in seven portions during 45 min. The solution was stirred for 15 min at -20 °C followed by addition of *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (0.901 g, 4.73 mmol) in small portions. The solution was stirred for 4 h at -20 °C. Additional sodium hydride (0.252 g, 6.30 mmol) and *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (0.751 g, 3.93 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was kept at -20 °C for 48 h. The reaction was quenched by addition of ice-cold water (50 cm^3) whereupon extraction was performed with dichloromethane (3x 60 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 20 cm^3) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give the intermediate **56** (1.80 g).

Example 59

***(1S,3R,4R,7S)*-7-Benzyloxy-1-benzyloxymethyl-3-(4-*N*-benzoylcytosin-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (57).** Intermediate **56** (1.80 g) was dissolved in anhydrous DMF (30.0 cm^3) and a 60% suspension of sodium hydride in mineral oil (w/w, 0.16 g, 3.9

mmol) was added in five portions during 30 min at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred for 36 h at room temperature. The reaction was quenched by adding ice-cold water (70 cm^3) and the resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 50 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 30 cm^3) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvents were removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99.5:0.5, v/v) as eluent to give compound **57** as a white solid material (1.08 g, 79%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 8.95 (1H, br s, NH), 8.20 (1H, d, *J* 7.5, 6-H), 7.95-7.92 (2H, m, Bz), 7.66-7.22 (14H, m, Bn, Bz, 5-H), 5.78 (1H, s, 1'-H), 4.70-4.65 (3H, m, 2'-H, Bn), 4.60 (1H, d, *J* 11.6, Bn), 4.47 (1H, d, *J* 11.6, Bn), 4.05-3.78 (5H, m, 3'-H, 5'-H_a, 1''-H_a, 5'-H_b, 1''-H_b). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 167.0, 162.36 (C-4, C=O), 154.5 (C-2), 144.58 (C-6), 137.46, 136.93, 133.35, 132.93, 129.11, 128.67, 128.50, 128.16, 128.11, 127.68, 127.60 (Bn), 96.35 (C-5), 88.38, 87.67 (C-1', C-4'), 76.14, 75.70, 73.79, 72.27, 72.09, 64.34 (Bn, C-5', C-1'', C-2', C-3'). FAB-MS *m/z* 540 $[M+H]^+$. Found: C, 68.0; H, 5.5, N, 7.5; $C_{31}H_{29}N_3O_6$ requires C, 69.0; H, 5.4; N, 7.8%).

Example 60

***(1S,3R,4R,7S)*-7-Hydroxy-1-hydroxymethyl-3-(cytosin-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]-heptane (57A).** To a solution of nucleoside **57** (0.3 g, 0.55 mmol) in anhydrous methanol (22 cm^3) were added 1,4-cyclohexadiene (5.0 cm^3) and 10% palladium on carbon (0.314 g). The mixture was stirred under reflux for 18 h. Additional 10% palladium on carbon (0.380 g) and 1,4-cyclohexadiene (5.5 cm^3) were added and the mixture was refluxed for 54 h. The reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of silica gel which was subsequently washed with methanol (1500 cm^3). The combined filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (92.5:7.5, v/v) as eluent to give compound **57A** as a white solid material (0.051 g, 36%). δ_H ($(CD_3)_2SO$) 7.73 (1H, d, *J* 7.7, 6-H), 7.12-7.20 (2H, br s, NH_2), 5.74 (1H, d, *J* 7.7, 5-H), 5.61 (1H, br s, 3'-OH), 5.39 (1H, s, 1' -H), 5.12 (1H, m, 5'-OH), 4.08 (1H, s, 2'-H), 3.80 (1H, d, *J* 7.7, 1''-H_a), 3.81 (1H, s, 3'-H), 3.74 (2H, m, 5'-H_a, 5'-H_b), 3.63 (1H, d, *J* 7.7, 1''-H_b). δc ($(CD_3)_2SO$) 165.66 (C-4), 154.58 (C-2), 139.68 (C-6), 93.19 (C-5), 88.42, 86.73 (C-1', C-4'), 78.87, 70.85, 68.32, 56.04 (C-2', C-1'', C-3', C-5'). FAB-MS *m/z* 256 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 61

Intermediate 57B. To nucleoside **57A** (0.030 g, 0.11 mmol) suspended in anhydrous pyridine (2.0 cm^3) was added trimethylsilyl chloride (0.14 cm^3, 1.17 mmol) and stirring was continued for 1 h at room temperature. Benzoyl chloride (0.07 cm^3, 0.58 mmol) was added at 0 °C and the mixture was stirred for 2 h at room temperature. After cooling the reaction mixture to 0 °C, water (3.0 cm^3) was added. After stirring for 5 min, an aqueous solution of ammonia (1.5 cm^3, 32%, w/w) was added and stirring was continued for 30 min at room temperature. The mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (97.5:2.5, v/v) as eluent to give intermediate **57B** as white solid material (0.062 g).

Example 62

(*1R,3R,4R,7S*)-1-(4,4'-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-7-hydroxy-3-(4-*N*-benzoylcytosine-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (57C). To a solution of intermediate **57B** (0.042 g, 0.11 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (1.5 cm^3) was added 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride (0.06 g, 0.17 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3.5 h, cooled to 0 °C, and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (20 cm^3) was added. Extraction was performed using dichloromethane (3 x 10 cm^3). The combined organic phase was dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol/pyridine (98.0:1.5:0.5, v/v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **57C** as a white solid material (0.031g, ~63% from **57A**). δ_H (C_5D_5N) 12.32 (1H, br s, NHCO), 8.75-7.06 (20H, m, DMT, Bz, H-5, H-6), 6.24 (1H, s, 1'-H), 5.11 (1-H, s, 2'-H), 4.90 (1H, s, 3'-H), 4.38 (1H, d, *J* 7.6, 1''-H_a), 4.10 (1H, d, *J* 7.6, 1''-H_b), 4.02 (1H, d, *J* 10.6, 5'-H_a), 3.87 (1H, d, *J* 10.6, 5'-H_b), 3.77, 3.76 (2 x 3H, 2 x s, 2 x OCH_3). δ_C (C_5D_5N) 169.00 (NHCO), 164.24 (C-2), 159.39 (DMT), 150.5, 145.62 (DMT), 144.31, 132.89, 130.82, 130.72, 129.09, 128.89, 128.60, 113.96 (DMT), 96.96 , 89.01, 87.18, 79.91, 72.56, 70.25 (C-5, C-1', C-4', C-2', C-1'',C-3'), 59.51 (C-5'), 55.33 (OCH_3). FAB-MS *m/z* 662 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 63

(*1R,3R,4R,7S*)-7-(2-Cyanoethoxy(diisopropylamino)phosphinoxy)-1-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-3-(4-*N*-benzoylcytosine-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (57D). To a solution of nucleoside **57C** (0.025 g, 0.03 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (1.5 cm^3) was added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.03 cm^3, 0.17 mmol) followed by dropwise addition of 2-cyanoethyl *N,N*-diisopropylphosphoramidochloridite (0.02 cm^3, 0.09 mmol). After stirring for 5 h at room temperature, the reaction mixture was cooled to 0 °C, dichloromethane/pyridine (10.0 cm^3, 99.5:0.5, v/v) was added, and washing was performed using a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 8 cm^3). The organic phase was separated, dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol/pyridine (99.0:0.5:0.5, v/v/v) as eluent to give amidite **57D** as a light yellow oil (0.038 g). δ_P ($CDCl_3$) 147.93.

Example 64

9-(2-*O*-Acetyl-4-*C*-acetyloxymethyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)-6-*N*-benzoyladenine (58). To a stirred suspension of the anomeric mixture **33** (5.0 g, 10.3 mmol) and 6-*N*-benzoyladenine (3.76 g, 15.7 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (200 cm^3) was added *N,O*-bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (15.54 cm^3, 61.8 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at reflux for 1 h and then cooled to room temperature. Trimethylsilyl triflate (7.0 cm^3, 38.7 mmol) was added dropwise and the mixture was refluxed for 20 h. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature and the volume of the mixture was reduced to 1/4 under reduced pressure. Dichloromethane (250 cm^3) was added, and the solution was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 50 cm^3) and water (50 cm^3). The organic phase was dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99.5:0.5, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **58** as white solid material (3.65 g, 52%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 9.25 (1H, br s, NH), 8.71 (1H, s, 8-H), 8.24 (1H, s, 2-H), 8.0 (2H, d, *J* 7.5, Bz), 7.60-7.23 (13H, m, Bn, Bz), 6.35 (1H, d, *J* 4.6, 1'-H), 5.99 (1H, dd, *J* 4.9, 5.3, 2'-H), 4.78 (1H, d, *J* 5.6, 3'-H), 4.64-4.42 (5H, m, Bn, 1''-H_a), 4.25 (1H, d, *J* 12.1, 1''-H_b), 3.72 (1H, d, *J* 10.1, 5'-H_a), 3.56 (1H, d, *J* 10.1, 5'-H_b), 2.07 (3H, s, $COCH_3$), 2.02 (3H, s, $COCH_3$). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 170.42, 169.72 ($COCH_3$), 164.60 (NHCO), 152.51 (C-6), 151.45 (C-2), 149.46 (C-4), 141.88 (C-8), 137.04, 137.00, 133.50, 132.60, 128.86,

128.66, 128.53, 128.41, 128.38, 128.18, 128.06, 127.91, 127.88, 127.79, 127.63, 123.26 (Bz, Bn, C-5), 86.38 (C-1'), 86.25 (C-4'), 77.74, 74.74, 74.44, 73.48 (C-2', C-3', 2 x Bn), 70.11 (C-1''), 63.42 (C-5'), 20.70, 20.54 ($COCH_3$). FAB-MS *m/z* 666 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 65

9-(3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-hydroxymethyl-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)-6-*N*-benzoyladenine (59). To a stirred solution of nucleoside **58** (4.18 g, 6.28 mmol) in methanol (50 cm^3) was added sodium methoxide (0.75 g, 13.8 mmol) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 h, and ice was added. The mixture was neutralised using a 20% aqueous solution of HCl. Extraction was performed using dichloromethane (3 x 75 cm^3), the organic phase was separated, dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/-methanol (98.5:1.5, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **59** as a white solid material (2.68 g, 73%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 9.42 (1H, br s, NH), 8.58 (1H, s, H-8), 8.16 (1H, s, 2-H), 7.96 (2H, d, *J* 7.2, Bz), 7.52-7.08 (13H, m, Bn, Bz), 6.18 (1H, d, *J* 2.5, 1'-H), 4.85-4.38 (4H, m, Bn, 2'-H, 3'-H), 4.33 (2H, s, Bn) 3.90 (1H, d, *J* 11.9, 1''-H_a), 3.71 (1H, d, *J* 11.8, 1''-H_b), 3.50-3.39 (2H, m, 5-H). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 164.98 (NHCO), 152.19 (C-6), 151.00 (C-2), 149.34 (C-4), 142.28 (C-8), 137.32, 137.25, 133.46, 132.70, 128.69, 128.49, 128.40, 128.11, 128.03, 127.94, 127.83, 127.62, (Bz, Bn), 122.92 (C-5), 90.94, 88.75 (C-1', C-4'), 77.65, 74.08, 73.44, 73.20, 71.12, 62.39 (C-1'', C-5', C-2', C-3', 2 x Bn). FAB-MS *m/z* 582 $[M+H]^+$. Found: C, 65.6; H, 5.5; N, 11.7; $C_{32}H_{31}N_5O_6$ requires C, 66.1; H, 5.4; N, 12.0%.

Example 66

Intermediate 60. A solution of nucleoside **59** (2.43 g, 4.18 mmol) in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (25 cm^3) was stirred at -20 °C and a 60% suspension of sodium hydride in mineral oil (w/w, 0.28 g, 7.0 mmol) was added in four portions during 30 min. After stirring for 1 h, *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (1.34 g, 7.0 mmol) was added in small portions. The mixture was stirred at -10 °C for 15 h. Ice-cold water (50 cm^3) was added and extraction was performed with dichloromethane (3 x 50 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (2 x 25 cm^3), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated under reduced

pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give the intermediate **60** (1.95 g).

Example 67

***(1S,3R,4R,7S)*-7-Benzyloxy-1-benzyloxymethyl-3-(6-*N*-benzoyladenin-9-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (61).** Intermediate **60** (1.90 g) was dissolved in anhydrous DMF (20 cm^3) and a 60% suspension of sodium hydride in mineral oil (w/w, 0.16 g, 3.87 mmol) was added in small portions at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred for 10 h at room temperature and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (75 cm^3), washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (2 x 25 cm^3), dried (Na_2SO_4), and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **61** as white solid material (1.0 g, ~44% from **59**). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 8.71 (H, s, 8-H), 8.23 (1H, s, 2-H), 8.02 (2H, m, *J* 7.0, Bz), 7.99-7.19 (13H, m, Bn, Bz), 6.08 (1H, s, 1'-H), 4.78 (1H, s, 2'-H), 4.61-4.50 (4H, m, 2 x Bn), 4.24 (1H, s, 3'-H), 4.12 (1H, d, *J* 7.8, 1''-H_a), 4.00 (1H, d, *J* 7.9, 1''-H_b), 3.85-3.78 (2H, m, 5'-H_a, 5'-H_b). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 164.61 (NHCO), 152.32 (C-6), 150.61 (C-2), 149.35 (C-4), 140.67 (C-8), 137.24, 136.76, 133.33, 132.66, 128.68, 128.39, 128.29, 127.94, 127.77, 127.51 (Bn, Bz), 123.43 (C-5), 87.14, 86.52 (C-1', C-4'), 77.21, 76.77, 73.56, 72.57, 72.27, 64.65 (C-2', C-3', C-1'', 2 x Bn, C-5'). FAB-MS *m/z* 564 $[M+H]^+$. Found: C, 66.2; H, 5.5; N, 11.4; $C_{32}H_{29}N_5O_5$ requires C, 66.2; H, 5.2; N, 12.4%.

Example 68

***(1S,3R,4R,7S)*-7-Hydroxy-1-hydroxymethyl-3-(adenin-9-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]-heptane (61A).** To a stirred solution of nucleoside **61** (0.80 g, 1.42 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (30 cm^3) at -78 °C was dropwise during 30 min added BCl_3 (1 M solution in hexane; 11.36 cm^3, 11.36 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 4 h at -78 °C, additional BCl_3 (1M solution in hexane, 16.0 cm^3, 16.0 mmol) was added drop-wise, and the mixture was stirred at -78 °C for 3 h. Then the temperature of the reaction mixture was raised slowly to room temperature and stirring was continued for 30 min. Methanol (25.0 cm^3) was added at -78 °C, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 h. The mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/-

methanol (92:8, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **61A** as a white solid material (0.332 g, 84%). δ_H ($(CD_3)_2SO$) 8.22 (1H, s, 8-H), 8.15 (1H, s, 2-H), 7.33 (2H, s, NH_2), 5.89 (1H, s, 1'-H), 5.83 (1H, d, *J* 4.2, 3'-OH), 5.14 (1H, t, *J* 5.9, 5'-OH), 4.14 (1H, s, 2'-H), 4.25 (1H, d, *J* 4.2, 3'-H), 3.92 (1H, d, *J* 7.8, 1''-H_a), 3.81-3.41 (3H, m, 5'-H_a, 5'-H_b, 1''-H_b). δ_C ($(CD_3)_2SO$) 155.90 (C-6), 152.64 (C-2), 148.35 (C-4), 137.72 (C-8), 118.94 (C-5), 88.48, 85.17 (C-1', C-4'), 79.09, 71.34, 69.83, 56.51 (C-2', C-3', C-1'', C-5'). FAB-MS *m/z* 280 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 69

(*1S,3R,4R,7S*)-7-Hydroxy-1-hydroxymethyl-3-(6-*N*-benzoyladenin-9-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (61B). To a stirred solution of nucleoside **61A** (0.32 g, 1.15 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (1 cm^3) was added trimethylsilyl chloride (0.73 cm^3, 5.73 mmol) and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 min. Benzoyl chloride (0.67 cm^3, 5.73 mmol) was added at 0 °C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 h. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0 °C and ice-cold water (15.0 cm3) was added. After stirring for 5 min, a 32% (w/w) aqueous solution of ammonia (1.5 cm^3) was added and the mixture was stirred for 30 min. The mixture was evaporated to dryness and the residue was dissolved in water (25 cm^3). After evaporation of the mixture under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by silica gel chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (97:3, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **61B** as a white solid material (0.55 g).
FAB-MS *m/z* 384 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 70

(*1R,3R,4R,7S*)-7-Hydroxy-1-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-3-(6-*N*-benzoyladenin-9-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (61C). To a stirred solution of compound **61B** (0.50 g) in anhydrous pyridine (20 cm^3) was added 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride (0.71 g, 2.09 mmol) and 4-*N,N*-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP) (0.1 g). After stirring for 2 h at room temperature and for 1 h at 50 °C, the reaction mixture was cooled to 0 °C and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (100 cm^3) was added. After extraction using dichloromethane (3 x 50 cm^3), the combined organic phase was dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography eluting with dichloromethane/methanol/pyridine (98.0:1.5:0.5) to give nucleoside **61C** as a white solid material (0.36 g, ~50% from

61A). δ_H (C_5D_5N) 12.52 (NHCO), 9.10 (2H, d, *J* 7.7, Bz), 8.88 (1H, s, 8-H), 8.50-7.11 (17H, m, DMT, Bz, 2-H), 6.65 (1H, s, H-1'), 5.25 (2H, s, H-2', H-3'), 4.71 (1H, d, *J* 7.8, 1''-H_a), 4.56 (1H, d, *J* 7.8, 1''-H_b), 4.20 (1H, d, *J* 10.8, 5'-H_a), 4.07 (1H, d, *J* 10.8, 5'-H_b), 3.82, 3.81 (2 x 3H, 2 x s, 2 x OCH_3). δ_C (C_5D_5N) 167.56 (NHCO), 159.24 (C-6), 152.50, 152.08, 151.81, 145.84, 141.45, 136.52, 136.28, 132.55, 130.76, 130.70, 129.32, 128.85, 128.76, 128.46, 127.38, 126.33 (DMT, Bz, C-2, C-4, C-8), 113.84 (C-5), 88.64, 87.20, 86.85, 80.52, 73.13, 72.16, 60.86 (C-1', C-4', DMT, C-2', C-3', C-1'', C-5'), 55.24 (OCH_3). FAB-MS *m/z* 686 $[M+H]^+$. Found: C, 68.3; H, 5.0; N, 9.7; $C_{39}H_{35}N_5O_7$ requires C, 68.3; H, 5.1; N, 10.2%).

Example 71

(*1R,3R,4R,7S*)-7-(2-Cyanoethoxy(diisopropylamino)phosphinoxy)-1-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-3-(6-*N*-benzoyladenin-9-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (61D). To a solution of compound **61C** (190 mg, 0.277 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (1.5 cm^3) were added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.16 cm^3, 0.94 mmol) and 2-cyanoethyl *N,N*-diisopropylphosphoramidochloridite (0.1 cm^3, 0.42 mmol) at 0°C. The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 5 h. The solution was diluted by dichloromethane (50 cm^3), washed by a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (2 x 30 cm^3) and evaporated under reduced pressure. The products were isolated by silica gel HPLC (PrepPak cartridge, 25 x 100 mm, packed by Prep Nova-Pak® HR Silica 6µm 60Å; gradient of solution B in solution A (from 0% to 15% during 25 min and from 15% to 100% during another 25 min, solution A: petroleum/dichloromethane/pyridine, 60/39.6/0.4, v/v/v, solution B: ehylacetate. The fractions containing the two main products (retention times 30-40 min) were joined, concentrated under reduced pressure, co-evaporated with anhydrous toluene (2 x 40 cm^3) and dried overnight *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (4 cm^3) and precipitated by adding this solution to anhydrous petroleum ether (80 cm^3) under intensive stirring. The precipitate was collected by filtration, washed by petroleum ether (2 x 20 cm^3) and dried under reduced pressure to give compound **61D** (178 mg, 73%) as a white solid material. δ_P (CD_3CN) 148.42, 147.93.

Example 72

1-(2,3-*O*-isopropylidene-4-*C*-(4-toluenesulphonyloxymethyl)-β-D-ribofuranosyl)uridine (62). To a stirred solution of 1-(2,3-*O*-isopropylidene-4'-*C*-hydroxymethyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)uridine (2.0 g, 6.4 mmol) (R. Youssefyeh, D. Tegg, J. P. H. Verheyden, G. H. Jones and J. G. Moffat, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 1977, **5**, 435; G. H. Jones, M. Taniguchi, D. Tegg and J. G. Moffat, *J. Org. Chem.*, 1979, **44**, 1309) in anhydrous pyridine (28 cm^3) was added *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (1.46 g, 7.3 mmol) dissolved in anhydrous pyridine (10 cm^3) at -30 °C. After 30 min, the reaction mixture was allowed to reach room temperature and stirring was continued at room temperature for 12 h. The reaction was quenched with methanol (4 cm^3), silica gel (2g) was added and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using a gradient of 0-3% methanol in dichloromethane (v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **62** as a pale reddish solid material (1.8 g, 60%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 9.80 (1H, br s, NH), 7.80 (2H, d, *J* 8.3, Ts), 7.46 (1H, d, *J* 8.1, 6-H), 7.35 (2H, d, *J* 8.01, Ts), 5.72 (1H, d, *J* 8.0, 5-H), 5.54 (1H, d, *J* 3.5, 1'-H), 5.08 (1H, dd, *J* 3.5, 6.4, 2'-H), 4.94 (1H, d, *J* 6.4, 3'-H), 4.18 (2H, s, 1''-H), 3.82-3.70 (2H, m, 5'-H), 2.45 (3H, s, Ts), 1.46, 1.29 (6 H, s, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 163.6 (C-4), 150.4 (C-2), 145.2 (C-6), 142.9, 132.5, 129.9, 128.0 (Ts), 114.7 (OCO), 102.6 (C-5), 94.9, 87.6, 83.9, 81.5 (C-4', C-1', C-3', C-2'), 68.7, 63.5 (C-1'', C-5'), 26.4, 24.7 (CH_3), 21.7 (Ts). FAB-MS *m/z* 469 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 73

1-(4-*C*-(*p*-Toluenesulphonyloxymethyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)uridine (63). Nucleoside **62** (1.33 g, 2.83 mmol) was dissolved in 80% acetic acid (25 cm^3) and stirred at 80 °C for 3 h whereupon the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was coevaporated with ethanol (10 cm^3) and purified by silica gel column chromatography using a gradient of 0-2% methanol in dichloromethane (v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **63** as a white solid material (391 mg, 33%). δ_H (CD_3OD) 7.81 (1H, d, *J* 8.1, 6-H), 7.77 (1H, d, *J* 8.4, Ts), 7.40 (2H, d, *J* 8.6, Ts), 5.74 (1H, d, *J* 6.6, 1'-H), 5.69 (1H, d, *J* 8.1, 5-H), 4.17-4.33 (2H, m, 2'-H, 3'-H), 3.67-3.62 (2H, m, 1''-H), 3.26-3.20 (2H, m, 5'-H), 2.43 (3H, s, Ts). δ_C (CD_3OD) 166.0 (C-4), 153.0 (C-2), 146.5 (C-6), 142.5, 130.9, 129,15 (Ts), 103.1 (C-5), 89.0, 87.2 (C-1', C-4'), 75.1, 72.7, 71.3, 63.8 (C-1'', C-3', C-2', C-5'), 21.6 (Ts).

Example 74

(*1S,3R,4R,7S*)-7-Hydroxy-1-hydroxymethyl-3-(uracil-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]-heptane (44). To a stirred solution of nucleoside **63** (64 mg, 0.14 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (2 cm^3) was slowly added sodium hydride (8.4 mg, 21 mmol, 60% suspension in mineral oil, w/w) in anhydrous DMF (2 cm^3) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was then heated to 120 °C for 6 h. After quenching the reaction with water (2 cm^3), the solvents were removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using a gradient of 5-7% methanol in dichloromethane (v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **44** as a white solid material (9 mg, 29%). NMR data were in agreement with those reported earlier for compound **44**.

Example 75

(*1S,3R,4R,7S*)-7-Acetoxy-1-acetoxymethyl-3-(thymin-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]-heptane (64). To a stirred solution of nucleoside **37** (209.8 mg, 0.78 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (2.5 cm^3) was added acetic anhydride (0.3 cm^3, 3.23 mmol) and a catalytic amount of DMAP (5 mg). After stirring for 2 h, ethanol was added (4 cm^3) and the mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was redissolved in dichloromethane and washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (7 cm^3). The organic phase was dried (Na_2SO_4), and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (97:3, v/v) as eluent affording **64** as a white solid material (249 mg, 90%). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 169.59, 163.20, 149.50, 133.55, 110.64, 87.05, 85.38, 77.84, 71.70, 71.02, 58.60, 20.62, 20.53, 12.78. FAB-MS *m/z* 355 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 76

(*1S,3R,4R,7S*)-1-Hydroxymethyl-3-(5-methyl-4-*N*-benzoylcytosine-1-yl)-7-hydroxy-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (65). To a solution of nucleoside **64** (232.7 mg, 0.66 mmol) in anhydrous acetonitrile (3 cm^3) was added a solution of 1,2,4-triazole (420 mg, 6.1 mmol) and $POCl_3$ (0.12 cm^3, 1.3 mmol) in anhydrous acetonitrile (5 cm^3). The reaction mixture was cooled to 0 °C and anhydrous triethylamine (0.83 cm^3) was added, whereupon the mixture was kept for 90 min at room temperature. Triethylamine (0.54 cm^3) and water (0.14 cm^3) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred for 10 min and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved

in EtOAc and washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (2 x 9 cm^3) and water (9 cm^3). The aqueous phase was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 20 cm^3). The combined organic phase was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was redissolved in dioxane (4 cm^3), whereupon 32% aqueous ammonia (0.7 cm^3) was added. After stirring for 3 h, the reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure and coevaporated with anhydrous pyridine. The residue was dissolved in anhydrous pyridine (3.6 cm^3) and benzoyl chloride (0.42 cm^3, 3.6 mmol) was added. After stirring for 2 h, the reaction was quenched with water (1 cm^3) and the reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was then redissolved in EtOAc and washed with water (3 x 7 cm^3). The organic phase was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in pyridine/methanol/water (13:6:1, v/v/v, 14 cm^3) at 0 °C, and a 2M solution of NaOH in pyridine/methanol/water (13:6:1, v/v/v, 7 cm^3) was added. After stirring for 20 min, the reaction mixture was neutralised using a 2M solution of HCl in dioxane, and the reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (95:5, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **65** as a yellow foam (94.6 mg, 38%). δ_H (CD_3OD) 8.21 (1H, br, s), 8.02 (1H, m), 7.84-7.9 (1H, m), 7.41-7.58 (4H, m), 5.61 (1H, s), 4.36 (1H, s), 4.10 (1H, s), 3.98 (1H, d, *J* 8.0), 3.94 (2H, s), 3.78 (1H, d, *J* 7.9), 2.11 (3H, d, *J* 1.0). δ_C (CD_3OD, selected signals) 133.66, 132.90, 130.63, 129.50, 129.28, 128.65, 90.71, 88.86, 80.57, 72.47, 70.22, 57.53, 14.01. FAB-MS *m/z* 374 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 77

(*1R,3R,4R,7S*)-1-(4,4'-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-3-(5-methyl-4-*N*-benzoylcytosine-1-yl)-7-*O*-(2-cyanoethoxy(diisopropylamino)phosphinoxy)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (66). To a stirred solution of nucleoside **65** (82 mg, 0.22 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (1.5 cm^3) was added 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride (80 mg, 0.24 mmol) and stirring was continued at room temperature for 12 h. Additional 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride (80 mg, 0.24 mmol) was added, and stirring was continued for another 12 h. Methanol (0.5 cm^3) was added and the reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol/pyridine (98.5:1.0:0.5, v/v/v). The resulting intermediate (FAB-MS *m/z* 676) (50.2 mg) was coevaporated with anhydrous

acetonitrile and dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (0.62 cm^3). *N,N*-Diisopropylethylamine was added (0.1 cm^3) followed by addition of 2-cyanoethyl *N,N*-diisopropylphosphoramidochloridite (0.3 cm^3, 0.11 mmol). After stirring for 3 h at room temperature, water (1 cm^3) was added and the resulting mixture was diluted with ethylacetate (10 cm^3), washed with saturated aqueous solutions of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 × 6 cm^3) and brine (3 × 6 cm^3). The organic phase was dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column HPLC. Precipitation as described for compound **53** afforded compound **66** as a white solid material (29.5 mg, 0.03 mmol, 14%). δ_P (CH_3CN) 148.46, 147.49.

Example 78

9-(4-(Hydroxymethyl)-2,3-*O*-isopropylidene-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)-6-*N*-benzoyladenine (67). A mixture of oxalyl chloride (0.93 mL, 10.75 mmol) and dichloromethane (25 mL) was cooled to -70°C. Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO, 1.7 mL, 22 mmol) was added drop-wise under intensive stirring. The mixture was stirred for 10 min at -70°C and a solution of 9-(2,3-*O*-isopropylidene-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)-6-*N*-benzoyladenine (3.4 g, 8.27 mmol) in dimethylsulfoxide/dichloromethane (1:9 v/v, 20 mL) was added during 5 min. The mixture was stirred at -60°C for 30 min. Triethylamine (7 mL, 50,3 mmol) was added and the mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature. The solution was diluted by dichloromethane (50 mL) and washed by water (3 x 100 mL). Water fractions were additionally washed by 100 mL of dichloromethane. The organic phase was concentrated to an oily mass, co-evaporated with dioxane (50 mL) and re-dissolved in 30 mL of dioxane. 37% aq. formaldehyde (2.95 mL, 33.4 mmol) and 2M aq. NaOH (8.26 mL) were added; the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 min and cooled to 0°C. Sodium borohydride (640 mg, 16.9 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature during 15 min. The reaction was quenched by addition of acetic acid (5 mL) and to the mixture was added dichloromethane and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (100 mL each). The organic phase was washed with water (100 mL), concentrated *in vacuo* and the product was isolated by column (2.5 x 25 cm) silica gel chromatography by the use of 2 - 3.2 % of methanol in dichloromethane (v/v) as eluent. Yield 1.85 g (50.7 %) of compound **67** as a white solid material. δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 8.72 (1H, s), 8.14 (1H, s), 8.03-8.00 (2H, m), 7.60-7.57 (1H, m), 7.56-7.46 (2H, m), 6.00 (1H, d, *J*4.9), 5.35 (1H, dd, *J*'5.8, *J*''5.0), 5.13 (1H, d, *J*5.8), 3.87-3.78 (4H, m), 1.65 (3H,

s), 1.38 (3H, s). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 164.8, 152.2, 150.4, 150.2, 142.6, 133.3, 132.9, 128.8, 128.0, 124.1, 114.7, 93.3, 90.2, 83.8, 82.5, 65.3, 62.9, 27.3, 25.1. FAB-MS: *m/z* 442 $[M+H]^+$, 464 $[M+Na]^+$.

Alternative synthesis of 67. To a solution of 2',3'-O-isopropylideneadenosine (15 g) in anhydrous pyridine (250 mL) was added trimethylsilyl chloride (15.5 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 min and cooled to 0 °C. Benzoyl chloride (17 mL) was added drop-wise and the mixture was kept at room temperature temperature for 2-3 h. Water (50 mL) and 25 % aq. ammonium hydroxide (100 mL) was added and stirring was continued for 3 h. Then the mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, co-evaporated with toluene (2 x 200 mL) and dichloro-methane (DCM) and saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate was added. The organic phase was evaporated to dryness to give a yellow solid. Recrystallisation from ethanol resulted in 12.5 g (ca 80 %) as a white solid intermediate material. Oxalyl chloride (4.68 mL) in dry DCM (120 mL) was cooled to -70° C. DMSO (8.5 mL) was added during intensive stirring. Later (10 min) a solution of the intermediate for which the synthesis is described above (17 g) in 10% DMSO/DCM (100 mL) added dropwise (20 min). The temperature was allowed to increase to -50° C over a period of 30 min after which the reaction was quenched with triethylamine (35 mL). To the mixture was added DCM (200 ml) which was washed with water (3 x 200 mL). The intermediate was concentrated *in vacuo* , co-evaporated with dioxane, and redissolved in dioxane (120 mL). Formaldehyde (37 %) and 2 M aq. sodium hydroxide (40 mL) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 1 h. The mixture was neutralised with acetic acid (6 mL) and DCM (400 ml) and saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate (400 mL) were added. The organic phase was concentrated. The product **67** was purified by column chromatography (silica gel, 1.5 - 5.0 % methanol/ DCM). Yield 8.5 g (46 %) of **67**. Data were as stated earlier in this example.

Example 79

9-(2,3-*O*-Isopropylidene-4-(p-toluenesulfonyloxymethyl)-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)-6-*N*-benzoyl-adenine (68) and 9-(4-hydroxymethyl-2,3-*O*-isopropylidene-5-*O*-(p-toluenesulfonyl)-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)-6-*N*-benzoyladenine. A mixture of compound **67** (1.95 g, 4.42 mmol) and p-toluenesulfonyl chloride (1.26 g, 6.63 mmol) was dissolved in 10 mL of anhydrous pyridine at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred for 4 h and then diluted

by dichloromethane (100 mL), washed with water (2x100 mL) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The purification of the mixture by silica gel column (2.5 x 20 cm) chromatography in a gradient (1-4%) of methanol in dichloromethane allowed isolation of starting material **67** (360 mg, 18.5 %) and two structural isomers, namely **68** (less polar isomer; 971 mg, 36.7 %) and 9-(4-hydroxymethyl-2,3-*O*-isopropylidene-5-*O*-(4'-toluenesulfonyl)-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)-N^6-benzoyladenine (more polar isomer; 352 mg, 13,1%) as white solid materials. **68**: δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 8.69 (1H, s), 8.11 (1H, s), 8.00 (2H, m), 7.79 (2H, m), 7.58-7.55 (1H, m), 7.50-7.46 (2H, m), 7.34-7.32 (2H, m), 5.88 (1H, d, *J*4.9), 5.35 (1H, dd, *J*'5.8, *J*''5.0), 5.13 (1H, d, *J*5.8), 3.87-3.78 (4H, m), 1.65 (3H, s), 1.38 (3H, s). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 164.7, 152.0, 150.2, 150.1, 144.9, 142.5, 133.2, 132.7, 132.3, 129.6, 128.6, 127.9, 127.8, 123.9, 114.6, 93.1, 87.9, 83.4, 81.6, 68.3, 64.4, 27.1, 25.0, 21.5. FAB-MS: *m/z* 596 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 80

9-(4-(p-Toluenesulfonyloxymethyl)-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)-6-*N*-benzoyladenine (69). A solution of compound **68** (940mg, 1.58 mmol) in 10 mL of 90 % aq. trifluoroacetic acid was kept for 30 min at room temperature and concentrated *in vacuo* to an oily mass. After co-evaporation with methanol (2x20 mL) and toluene (20 mL) the mixture was purified by silica column (2 x 25 cm) chromatography in a gradient of methanol (2-5.0%) in dichloromethane as eluent to give compound **69** (825 mg, 94 %) as white solid material. δ_H (methanol-d_4) 8.67 (1H, s), 8.53 (1H, s), 8.05 (2H, d, *J*7.7), 7.75 (2H, d, *J*8.2), 7.63 (1H, m), 7.53 (2H, m), 7.32 (2H, d, *J*8.0), 5.94 (1H, d, *J* 7.1), 4.92 (1H, dd, *J*'7.1, *J*''5.3), 4.41 (1H, d, *J*5.1), 4.38 (1H, d, *J*10.2), 4.28 (1H, d, *J*10.2), 3.80 (1H, d, *J*12.0), 3.68 (1H, d, *J*12.0), 2.35 (3H, s). δ_C (methanol-d_4) 168.2, 152.9, 150.8, 151.2, 146.4, 144.9, 134.7, 134.1, 134.0, 130.8, 129.7, 129.4, 129.1, 125.1, 90.0, 88.4, 75.3, 73.1, 71.1, 64.2, 21.6. FAB-MS: *m/z* 556 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 81

9-(4-(p-Toluenesulfonyloxymethyl)-3,5-*O*-(tetraisopropyldisiloxane-1,3-diyl)-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)-6-*N*-benzoyladenine (70). To a solution of compound **69** (780 mg, 1.40 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (7 mL) was added 1,3-dichloro-1,1,3,3-tetraisopropyl-disiloxane (500 µL, 1.57 mmol) at 0 °C. After stirring for 2 h at 0 °C additional 1,3-dichloro-1,1,3,3-tetraisopropyldisiloxane (50 µL, 0.16 mmol) was added. The reaction

mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature, diluted by dichloromethane (100 mL) and washed by water (2 x 100 mL). The organic phase was concentrated, and the residue was purified by the use of preperative HPLC (PrepPak cartridge, Porasil 15-20 µm 125 Å; eluent: 0-3% of methanol in dichloromethane (v/v) in 120 min; flow rate: 60 ml/min). Concentration *in vacuo* yielded 870 mg (78%) of compound **70** as a white solid material. δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 8.65 (1H, s), 8.03(2H, m), 8.00 (1H, s), 7.83 (2H, d, *J*8.4), 7.58 (1H, m), 7.49 (2H, m), 7.34 (2H, d, *J*8.4), 5.87 (1H, s), 5.70 (1H, d, *J*6.2), 4.68 (1H, d, *J*6.2), 4.59 (1H, d, *J*10.8), 4.31 (1H, d, *J*11.0), 3.91 (2H, s), 2.45 (3H, s), 1.03-0.84 (28H, m). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 164.9, 152.2, 150.5, 150.0, 144.7, 142.9, 133.5, 132.9, 132.8, 129.7, 128.8, 128.1, 128.0, 123.6, 90.3, 85.3, 76.0, 75.0, 68.7, 65.2, 21.6, 17.5, 17.4, 17.2, 17.1, 17.0,16.9, 13.1, 13.0, 12.5,12.4. FAB-MS: *m/z* 798 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 82

9-(2-*O*,4-*C*-Methylene-3,5-*O*-(tetraisopropyldisiloxa-1,3-diyl)-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)-6-*N*-benzoyladenine (71). A solution of compound **70** (540 mg, 0.68 mmol) in anhydrous THF (20 mL) was cooled to 0 °C and sodium hydride (130 mg of 60% suspension in mineral oil, 3.25 mmol) was added under stirring. The reaction mixture was stirred for 30 min and then neutralised by addition of 750 µL of acetic acid. Dichloromethane (50 mL) was added, the mixture was washed by a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (2 x 50 mL) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was applied to a silica gel column (2.5 x 25 cm) and the product was eluted in a gradient concentration (0.5 to 1.2 %) of methanol in dichloromethane as eluent to yield compound **71** (356 mg, 84 %) as a white foam. δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 8.77 (1H, s), 8.28 (1H, s), 8.03(2H, m), 7.59 (1H, m), 7.50 (2H, m), 6.08 (1H, s), 4.86 (1H, s), 4.56 (1H, s), 4.14 (1H, d, *J*13.2), 4.06 (1H, d, *J*7.7), 3.97 (1H, d, *J*13.2), 3.89 (1H, d, *J*7.7), 1.12-0.95 (28H, m). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 164.8, 152.6, 150.5, 149.6, 140.7, 133.6, 132.7, 128.7, 127.9, 123.1, 89.4, 86.5, 78.9, 71.7, 71.2, 56.7, 17.3, 17.1, 17.0,16.9, 16.8, 13.3, 13.1, 12.5,12.2. FAB-MS: *m/z* 626 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 83

7-Hydroxy-1-hydroxymethyl-3-(6-*N*-benzoyladenin-9-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]-heptane (61B). Triethylamine tris-hydrofluoride (300 µL, 1.84 mmol) was added to a solution of compound **71** (420 mg, 0.067 mmol) in anhydrous THF (7 mL). The

reaction mixture was kept at room temperature for 1 h and concentrated to an oil which was purified by silica gel column (2 x 25 cm) chromatography eluting with 4 - 10% of methanol in dichloromethane (v/v). Yield 232 mg (92 %) of compound **61B** as a white solid material. NMR data were identical with those reported earlier for **61B**.

Example 84

1-(3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-(*p*-toluenesulphonyloxymethyl)-2-*O*-*p*-toluenesulphonyl-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)thymine (72). A solution of 1-(3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-(hydroxymethyl)-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)thymine **35** (1.48 g, 3.16 mmol), DMAP (1.344 g, 0.011 mol) and *p*-toluenesulphonyl chloride (1.45 g, 7.6 mmol) in dichloromethane (20 ml) was stirred for 3 h at room temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (30 ml) and washed with saturated aqueous solutions of sodium hydrogen carbonate (3 x 20 ml) and sodium chloride (2 x 25 ml). The organic phase was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to silica gel column chromatography using methanol:dichloromethane (1:99, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **72** (1.95 g, 80%) as a white solid material. FAB-MS *m/e* 776. δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 162.9, 149.8 (C-2, C-4), 145.8, 145.2 (2 x Ts), 136.9, 136.8 (2 x Bn), 134.3 (C-6), 132.1, 132.0, 130.0, 129.9, 129.0 128.9, 128.4, 128.3, 128.2, 128.0, 127.7 (2 x Ts, 2 x Bn), 111.2 (C-5), 85.3, 84.0 (C-1', C-4'), 78.9, 78.3, 75.2, 74.3, 72.7, 69.1 (C-2', C-3', C-5', C-1'', 2 x Bn), 21.7 (2 x CH_3), 11.9 (CH_3). Anal. Calcd. for $C_{39}H_{40}N_2S_2O_{11}$: C, 60.30; H, 5.19; N, 3.61. Found: C, 59.95; H, 5.11, N 3.81.

Example 85

1-(2-Benzylamino-2-deoxy-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-2-*N*,4-*C*-methylene-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)-thymine (73). A solution of **72** (8.6 g, 11.1 mol) in benzyl amine (10 ml) was stirred at 130°C for 36 h. The reaction mixture was directly subjected to silica gel column chromatography using methanol:dichloromethane (1:99, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **73** (1.79 g, 30%) as a white solid material. FAB-MS *m/e* 540. δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 163.9, 149.8 (C-2, C-4), 139.2, 137.6, 137.3 (3 x Bn), 135.6 (C-6), 128.5, 128.4, 128.3, 128.2, 128.0, 127.7, 127.0 (3 x Bn), 109.6 (C-5), 88.2, 86.3 (C-1', C-4'), 76.7, 73.8, 72.0, 66.0, 63.8, 57.9, 57.8 (C-2', C-3', C-5', C-1'', 3 x Bn), 12.2 (CH_3). Anal. Calcd. for $C_{32}H_{33}N_3O_5$ x 0.5 H_2O: C, 70.06; H, 6.25; N, 7.66. Found: C, 70.00; H, 6.06; N, 7.50.

Example 86

1-(2-Amino-2-deoxy-2-*N*,4-*C*-methylene-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)thymine (74). To a solution of nucleoside **73** (1.62 g, 0.003 mol) in ethanol (150 ml) was added 20% palladium hydroxide on carbon (3 g) and the suspension was stirred for 5 days under hydrogen. The catalyst was filtered off (silica gel) and washed with methanol (20 ml). The combined filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give a white solid material which was filtered off and washed with methanol:dichloromethane (1:4, v/v) to give a monobenzylated intermediate (0.82 g, 76%). FAB-MS: m/e 360 $(M+H)^+$. ^{13}C-NMR (DMSO-d_6, 250 MHz): 163.7, 149.8 (C-2, C-4), 138.2 (Bn), 134.9 (C-6), 128.2, 127.5, 127.4 (Bn), 107.8 (C-5), 87.8, 87.6 (C-1', C-4'), 72.7, 68.9, 65.9, 61.7, 49.4 (C-2', C-3', C-5', C-1'', Bn), 11.9 (CH_3). Anal. Calcd. for $C_{18}H_{21}N_3O_5$: C, 60.16; H, 5.89; N, 11.69. Found: C, 59.86; H, 5.61; N, 11.56. A mixture of this intermediate (0.1 g, 0.29 mmol), ammonium formate (0.085g, 1.35 mmol), 10% palladium on carbon (130 mg) in anhydrous methanol (7 ml) was heated under reflux for 2 h. The catalyst was filtered off (silica gel) and washed with methanol (15 ml) and the combined filtrate was concentrated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to silica gel column chromatography using methanol:dichloromethane (1:9, v/v) as eluent to give title compound **74** (0.053 g, 71%) as a white solid material. FAB-MS *m/e* 270. δ_H (DMSO-d_6) 11.29 (bs, 1H, NH), 7.73 (d, 1H, *J* 1.1, 6-H), 5.31 (s, 1H, 1'-H), 5.29 (br s, 1H, 3'-OH), 5.13 (m, 1H, 5'-OH), 3.81 (s, 1H, 3'-H), 3.69 (m, 2H, 5'-H), 3.23 (s, 1H, 2'-H), 2.88 (d, 1H, *J* 9.8, 1''-H_a), 2.55 (d, 1H, *J* 9.8, 1''-H_b), 1.77 (d, 3H, *J* 0.8, CH_3). δ_C (DMSO-d_6) 164.0, 150.1 (C-2, C-4), 135.6 (C-6), 107.8 (C-5), 89.5, 87.9 (C-1', C-4'), 68.7, 61.9, 57.1, 49.4, (C-2', C-3', C-5', C-1''). Anal. Calcd. for $C_{11}H_{15}N_3O_5 \times 0.5\ H_2O$: C, 47.48; H, 5.80; N, 15.10. Found: C, 47.54; H, 5.30; N, 14.79.

Alternative method for conversion of 73 to 74. To a solution of **73** (0.045 g, 0.0834 mmol) in methanol (6 ml) was added 10% Pd on carbon (0.118 g) and - in three portions during 3 h - ammonium formate (0.145 g, 0.0023 mol). The suspension was refluxed for 4.5 h. The catalyst was filtered off (silica gel) and washed with methanol (4 x 3 ml). The combined filtrate was concentrated and the residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel using methanol:dichloromethane (1:9, v/v) as

eluent to give nucleoside **74** (0.015 g, 67%). Spectral data were in accordance with data reported earlier in this example for **74**.

Example 87

1-(2-Amino-2-deoxy-2-*N*,4-*C*-methylene-2-*N*-trifluoroacetyl-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)thymine (74-$COCF_3$). To a suspension of nucleoside **74** (0.050 g, 0.186 mmol) in methanol (2 mL) were added DMAP (0.013 mg, 0.106 mmol) and ethyl trifluoroacetate (0.029 mL, 0.242 mmol) and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2.5 h. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel using methanol:dichloromethane (2.5:97.5, v/v) as eluent to give the title nucleoside **74-$COCF_3$** as a white solid material after evaporation of the solvents under reduced pressure (0.055 g, 81%). FAB-MS *m/z* 366 $[M+H]^+$. ^{13}C NMR (CD_3OD, 62.9 MHz) δ 166.5, 157.7 (q, $^2J_{C,F}$ 37.5 Hz, $COCF_3$), 157.6 (q, $^2J_{C,F}$ 37.2 Hz, $COCF_3$), 151.8, 136.8, 136.8, 117.6 (d, $^1J_{C,F}$ 287.5 Hz, CF_3), 117.5 (d, $^1J_{C,F}$ 286.5 Hz, CF_3), 110.8, 110.8, 90.7, 89.3, 87.7, 87.3, 70.1, 68.6, 66.2, 66.2, 64.5, 57.9, 53.3, 12.7. Anal. Calcd. for $C_{13}H_{14}N_3O_6F_3$: C, 42.8; H, 3.9; N, 11.5. Found: C, 42.5; H, 4.0; N, 11.2.

Example 88

1-(2-Amino-2-deoxy-5-*O*-4,4'-dimethoxytrityl-2-*N*,4-*C*-methylene-2-*N*-trifluoroacetyl-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)thymine (74-DMT). To a solution of nucleoside **74-$COCF_3$** (0.030 g, 0.082 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (0.6 mL) at 0 °C was dropwise (during 20 min) added 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride (0.054 g, 0.159 mmol) dissolved in anhydrous pyridine:dichloromethane (0.6 mL, 1:1, v/v) and the mixture was stirred for 10 h at room temperature. A mixture of ice and water was added (5 mL) and the resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 5 mL). The combined organic phase was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 2 mL), dried (Na_2SO_4) and filtered. The filtrate was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure and the residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel using methanol:dichloromethane:pyridine (1.5:98.0:0.5, v/v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **74-DMT** as a white solid material after evaporation of the solvents under reduced pressure (0.051 g, 93%). FAB-MS *m/z* 667 $[M]^+$, 668 $[M+H]^+$.FAB-HRMS calcd. for $C_{34}H_{32}N_3O_8F_3^+$: 667.2142. Found: 667.2146. ^{13}C NMR (C_5D_5N, 100.6 MHz) δ 165.1, 165.0, 159.5, 159.5, 151.4, 145.7, 136.3, 136.1, 134.8, 134.6, 130.9, 130.9,

130.9, 128.9, 128.9, 128.7, 128.7, 128.4, 127.7, 123.2, 114.1, 114.1, 114.0, 110.4, 89.4, 87.9, 87.5, 87.4, 87.2. 70.8, 69.0, 66.0, 64.4, 60.5, 60.2, 55.5, 53.6, 53.4, 49.9, 13.2, 13.1.

Example 89

1-(2-Amino-3-*O*-(2-cyanoethoxy(diisopropylamino)phosphino-2-deoxy)-5-*O*-4,4'-dimethoxytrityl-2-*N*,4-*C*-methylene-2-*N*-trifluoroacetyl-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)thymine (74A). To a solution of nucleoside **74-DMT** (0.121 g, 0.181 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (2 mL) were added *N*,*N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.093 mL, 0.54 mmol) and 2-cyanoethyl *N*,*N*-diisopropylphosphoramidochloridite (0.057 mL, 0.26 mmol) at 0 °C and the mixture was stirred for 10 h at room temperature. The mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (20 mL), extracted with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 10 mL), dried (Na_2SO_4) and filtered. The filtrate was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure and the residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel using methanol:dichloromethane:-pyridine (1.5:98.0:0.5, v/v/v) as eluent to give crude product (0.107 g) after evaporation of the solvents under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (1 mL) and by dropwise addition to vigorously stirred petroleum ether (60-80 °C, 30 mL) at -30 °C, nucleotide **74A** precipitated to give a white solid material after filtration (0.090 g, 57%). FAB-MS *m/z* 868 $[M+H]^+$, 890 $[M+Na]^+$. ^{31}P NMR (CD_3CN, 121.5 MHz) δ 150.4, 150.2, 148.8, 149.1.

Example 90

1-(2-Amino-2-*N*,4-*C*-methylene-3,5-*O*-(tetraisopropyldisiloxane-1,3-diyl)-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)thymine (74B). To a solution of nucleoside **74** (0.20 g, 0.74 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (3 mL) at -15 °C was dropwise (during 3 h) added 1,3-dichloro-1,1,3,3-tetraisopropyldisiloxane (0.305 mL, 0.0011 mol) and the mixture was stirred for 10 h at room temperature. MeOH (3 mL) was added and the mixture was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel using methanol:dichloromethane (1:99, v/v) to give nucleoside **74B** as a white solid material after evaporation of the solvents under reduced pressure (0.370 mg, 97%). FAB-MS *m/z* 512 $[M+H]^+$. ^1H NMR ($(CD_3)_2SO$, 400 MHz) δ 11.37 (bs, 1H), 7.48 (s, 1H), 5.32 (s, 1H), 4.06 (d, 1H, *J* 13.5 Hz), 4.00 (s, 1H), 3.84 (d, 1H, *J* 13.5 Hz), 3.41 (s, 1H), 2.92 (d, 1H, *J* 10.2 Hz), 2.64 (d, 1H, *J*

10.2 Hz), 1.74 (s, 3H), 1.10-0.92 (m, 28 H). ^{13}C NMR ($(CD)_3SO_2$, 62.9 MHz) δ 163.8, 149.8, 134.1, 107.9, 89.5, 87.9, 70.1, 61.1, 57.9, 49.3, 17.2, 17.2, 17.0, 16.9, 16.8, 16.7, 12.6, 12.2, 11.7. Anal. Calcd. for $C_{23}H_{41}N_3O_6Si_2$: C, 54.0; H, 8.1; N, 8.2. Found: C, 54.0; H, 8.3; N, 7.8.

Example 91

1-(2-Deoxy-2-methylamino-2-*N*,4-*C*-methylene-3,5-*O*-(tetraisopropyldisiloxane-1,3-diyl)-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)thymine (74C). To a solution of nucleoside **74B** (0.33 g, 0.64 mmol) in anhydrous THF:dichloromethane (4:1, v/v) at -10 °C was dropwise (during 30 min) added 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU, 0.125 mL, 0.836 mmol) and methyl iodide (0.05 mL, 0.79 mmol) and the mixture was stirred for 48 h at 10 °C. Additional DBU (0.05 mL, 0.33 mmol) and methyl iodide (0.020 mL, 0.32 mmol) was dropwise (during 15 min) added to the reaction mixture and stirring at 10 °C was continued for 24 h. The mixture was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure and the residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel using methanol:dichloromethane (1:99, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **74C** as a white solid material after evaporation of the solvents (0.25 g, 74%). FAB-MS *m/z* 526 $[M+H]^+$. ^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$, 400 MHz) δ 8.19 (bs, 1H), 7.65 (d, 1H, *J* 1.3 Hz), 5.59 (s, 1H), 4.11 (s, 1H), 4.05 (d, 1H, *J* 13.2 Hz), 3.87 (d, 1H, *J* 13.2 Hz), 3.44 (s, 1H), 2.98 (d, 1H, *J* 9.5 Hz), 2.71 (d, 1H, *J* 9.5 Hz), 2.72 (s, 3H), 1.91 (d, 1H, *J* 1.1 Hz), 1.12-0.96 (m, 28 H). ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$, 62.9 MHz) δ 163.7, 149.6, 135.2, 109.7, 90.9, 85.7, 71.4, 67.3, 58.6, 58.2, 41.2, 17.5, 17.4, 17.3, 17.2, 17.1, 16.9, 13.3, 13.1, 13.0, 12.6, 12.1. Anal. Calcd. for $C_{24}H_{44}N_3O_6Si_2$,0.25H_2O: C, 54.4; H, 8.3; N, 7.9. Found: C, 54.4; H, 8.1; N, 7.7.

Example 92

1-(2-Deoxy-2-methylamino-2-*N*,4-*C*-methylene-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)thymine (74D). To a solution of nucleoside **74C** (0.40 g, 0.76 mmol) in THF at room temperature was added a solution of tetrabutylammonium fluoride in THF (1.0 M, 2.2 mL, 2.2 mmol) and the reaction mixture was stirred for 20 min whereupon pyridine:water:methanol (6 mL, 3:1:1, v/v/v) was added. The mixture was added to Dowex 50x200 resin (2.2 g, H^+ (pyridinium) form, 100-200 mesh) suspended in pyridine:water:methanol (6 mL, 3:1:1, v/v/v) and the resulting mixture was stirred for 20 min. After filtration, the residue was washed with pyridine:water:methanol (3 x 3 mL, 3:1:1, v/v/v) and the

combined filtrate was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure to give an oily residue after coevaporation with methanol (2 x 5 mL). Column chromatography on silica gel using methanol:dichloromethane (1:49, v/v) as eluent gave nucleoside **74D** as a white solid material after evaporation of the solvents under reduced pressure (0.17 g, 79%). FAB-MS *m/z* 284 $[M+H]^+$. FAB-HRMS calcd. for $C_{12}H_{18}N_3O_5^+$: 284.12465. Found: 284.12402. ^1H NMR ($(CD_3)_2SO$, 400 MHz) δ 11.3 (bs, 1H, NH), 7.70 (d, 1H, *J* 1.1 Hz, 6-H), 5.50 (s, 1H, 1'-H), 5.26 (d, 1H, *J* 4.9 Hz, 3'-OH), 5.12 (t, 1H, *J* 5.7 Hz, 5'-OH), 3.87 (d, 1H, *J* 4.8 Hz, 3'-H), 3.67 (d, 2H, *J* 5.5 Hz, 5'-H), 3.12 (s, 1H, 2'-H), 2.87 (d, 1H, *J* 9.3 Hz, 5''-H_a), 2.56 (s, 3H, NCH_3), 2.52-2.49 (1H, m, 5''-H_b), 1.77 (s, 3H, CH_3). ^1H NMR (CD_3OD, 400 MHz) δ 7.80 (d, 1H, *J* 1.3 Hz, 6-H), 5.71 (s, 1H, 1'-H), 4.07 (s, 1H, 3'-H), 3.83 (s, 2H, 5'-H), 3.36 (s, 1H, 2'-H), 3.08 (d, 1H, *J* 9.9 Hz, 5''-H_a), 2.68 (s, 3H, NCH_3), 2.57 (d, 1H, *J* 9.9 Hz, 5''-H_b), 1.88 (d, 3H, *J* 1.1 Hz, CH_3). ^{13}C NMR (CD_3OD, 62.9 MHz) δ 166.6, 151.9, 137.4, 110.4, 91.3, 85.2, 71.4, 69.1, 59.4, 58.7, 40.2, 12.2.

Example 93

1-(2-Deoxy-5-*O*-4,4'-dimethoxytrityl-2-methylamino-2-*N*,4-*C*-methylene-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)thymine (74E). To a solution of nucleoside **74D** (0.135 g, 0.477 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (1.5 mL) at 0 °C was dropwise (during 20 min) added a solution of 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride (0.238 g, 0.702 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine:dichloromethane (1.0 mL, 1:1, v/v) and the resulting mixture was stirred for 10 h at RT. A mixture of ice and water was added (5 mL) and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic phase was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 5 mL), dried (Na_2SO_4) and filtered. The filtrate was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure and the residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel using methanol:-dichloromethane:pyridine (1:98:1, v/v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **74E** as a white solid material after evaporation of the solvents under reduced pressure (0.20 g, 72%). FAB-MS *m/z* 586 $[M+H]^+$. ^1H NMR (C_5D_5N , 400 MHz) δ 13.2 (bs, 1H), 7.98 (d, 1H, *J* 1.3 Hz), 7.98-7.00 (m, 13H), 6.12 (s, 1H), 4.78 (d, 1H, *J* 3.7 Hz), 3.88-3.79 (m, 4H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 3.29 (d, 1H, *J* 9.3 Hz), 2.84 (d, 1H, *J* 9.3 Hz), 2.81 (s, 3H), 1.85 (d, 3H, *J* 0.9 Hz). ^{13}C NMR (C_5D_5N, 62.9 MHz) δ 165.1, 159.2, 151.4, 145.9, 136.5, 136.4, 130.8, 130.7, 128.7, 128.4, 127.4, 113.8, 109.6, 89.8,

86.8, 85.1, 72.0, 68.7, 60.9, 59.4, 55.2, 40.1, 13.1. Anal. Calcd. for $C_{33}H_{35}N_3O_7$,0.25H_2O: C, 67.2; H, 6.1; N, 7.1. Found: C, 67.2; H, 6.2; N, 6.9.

Example 94

1-(3-*O*-(2-Cyanoethoxy(diisopropylamino)posphino)-5-*O*-4,4'-dimethoxytrityl-2-methylmino-2-*N*,4-*C*-methylene-2-deoxy-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)thymine (74F). To a solution of nucleoside **74E** (0.130 g, 0.222 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (2 mL) at 0 °C were added *N*,*N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.088 mL, 0.514 mmol) and 2-cyanoethyl *N*,*N*-diisopropylphosphoramidochloridite (0.065 mL, 0.291 mmol) and the mixture was stirred for 10 h at room temperature. Dichloromethane (30 mL) was added and the mixture was extracted with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (3 x 10 mL), dried (Na_2SO_4) and filtered. The filtrate was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure and the residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel using methanol:dichloromethane:pyridine (0.5:98.5:1.0, v/v/v) as eluent to give crude product (0.120 g) after evaporation of the solvents under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (1 mL) and by dropwise addition to vigorously stirred petroleum ether (60-80 °C, 30 mL) at -30 °C, nucleotide **74F** precipitated to give a white solid material after filtration (0.090 g, 52%). ^{31}P NMR (CD_3CN, 121.5 MHz) δ 147.7.

Example 95

1-(3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-(*p*-toluenesulphonyloxymethyl)-2-*O*-*p*-toluenesulphonyl-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)uracil (75). To a stirred solution of 1-(3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-hydroxymethyl-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)uracil **41** (3.55 g, 7.81 mmol) in dichloromethane (50 cm^3) were added DMAP (3.82 g) and *p*-toluenesulphonyl chloride (4.47 g, 23.5 mmol) at room temperature. Stirring was continued for 2 h, and dichloromethane (100 cm^3) was added. The reaction mixture was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (2 x 75 cm^3) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The organic phase was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99.5:0.5, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **75** (4.65g, 78%) as a white solid material. δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 8.49 (1H, br s, NH), 7.67 (1H, d, *J* 8.3, 6-H), 7.51-7.03 (18H, m, Bn, Ts), 6.0 (1H, d, *J* 7.6, 1'-H), 5.05 (1H, m, 2'-H), 4.91 (2H, m, 5-H, Bn), 4.56 (2H, m, Bn), 4.42 (1H, d, *J* 10.4, Bn), 4.31 (1H, d, *J* 4.9, 3'-H), 4.05 (2H, m, 1''-H), 3.75-3.64 (2H, m, 5'-H), 2.41 (3H, s,

CH_3), 2.34 (3H, s, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 162.2 (C-4), 149.5 (C-2), 146.0, 145.3 (Ts), 139.0 (C-6), 136.7, 131.9, 130.0, 129.9, 128.9, 128.7, 128.5, 128.4, 128.3, 128.2, 128.0, 127.6 (Bn, Ts) 102.7 (C-5), 85.5 (1'-C), 84.4 (4'-C), 79.2, 78.3, 75.1, 74.3, 72.4, 69.1 (Bn, 3'-C, 2'-C, 5'-C, 1''-C), 21.7, 21.6 (Ts). FAB-MS *m/z* 763. Found: C, 61.2 ;H, 4.4; N, 3.3; $C_{38}H_{38}N_2O_{11}S_2$ requires C, 59.8; H,5.0; N,3.6.

Example 96

1-(2-Deoxy-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-2-*S*,4-*C*-methylene-2-mercapto-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)thymine (76). To a stirred solution of nucleoside **75** (3.70g, 4.86 mmol) in DMF (40 cm^3) was added potassium thioacetate (0.83 g, 7.28 mmol). The mixture was stirred and heated at 110 °C for 80 h. After evaporation under reduced pressure, H_2O (100 cm^3) was added. Extraction was performed with dichloromethane (4 x 50 cm^3) and the combined organic phase was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99.6:0.4, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **76** (1.65g, 75%) as a white solid material. δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 9.08 (1H, br s, NH), 7.98 (1H, d, *J* 8.1, 6-H), 7.39-7.20 (10H, m, Bn), 5.85 (1H, s, 1'-H), 5.26 (1H, d, *J* 8.1, 5-H), 4.61 (1H, d *J* 11.4, 5'-H), 4.56 (2H, s, Bn), 4.45 (1H, d, *J* 11.4, Bn), 4.14 (1H, d, *J* 1.7, 3'-H), 3.82 (2H, m, Bn), 3.72 (1H, d, *J* 1.9, 2'-H), 3.02 (1H, d, *J* 9.9, 1''-H_a), 2.78 (1H, d, *J* 9.9, 1''-H_b). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 163.4 (C-4), 150.0 (C-2), 139.9 (C-6), 137.2, 136.8, 128.6, 128.5, 128.2, 127.9, 127.7 (Bn), 100.8 (C-5), 90.8, 88.8 (C-1', C-4'), 76.5, 73.8, 72.0, 70.0 (2 x Bn, C-3', C-5'), 49.52 (C-2'), 35.63 (C-1''). FAB-MS *m/z* 453. Found: C, 63.4; H, 5.1;N, 5.9; $C_{24}H_{24}N_2O_5S$ requires C, 63.7; H, 5.3; N, 6.1.

Example 97

1-(2-*O*-*p*-Toluenesulfonyl-4-*C*-(*p*-toluenesulfonyloxymethyl)-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)uracil (76A). To a solution of compound **75** (0.80 g, 1.0 mmol) in absolute ethanol (2 cm^3) was added 20% palladium hydroxide over carbon (0.80 g) and the mixture was degassed several times with hydrogen and stirring was continued under hydrogen for 48 h. The catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99:1, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **76A** (0.30 g, 49%) as a white solid material. δ_H (CD_3OD) 7.67 (4H, m), 7.45 (1H, d, *J* 8.2 Hz), 7.34 (4H, m), 5.86 (1H, d, *J* 8.0 Hz), 5.40 (1H, d, *J* 8.1 Hz), 4.95 (1H, m), 4.35 (1H, d, *J* 5.0

Hz), 4.17 (2H, m), 3.61 (2H, s), 2.40 (6H, s). δ_C (CD_3OD) 165.4, 151.6, 147.5, 146.6, 141.3, 134.0, 133.8, 131.4, 130.9, 129.2, 128.9, 103.7, 88.0, 85.4, 80.7, 72.4, 71.0, 64.3, 21.7, 21.6. FAB-MS *m/z* 583 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 98

1-(3,5-*O*-(Tetraisopropyldisiloxa-1,3-diyl)-2-*O*-*p*-toluenesulfonyl-4-*C*-(*p*-toluenesulfonyl-oxymethyl)-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)uracil (76B). To a stirred solution of nucleoside **76A** (0.27 g, 0.46 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (4 cm^3) was added 1,3-dichloro-1,1,3,3-tetraisopropyldisiloxane (0.22 cm^3, 0.70 mmol). After stirring for 48 h, the mixture was cooled to 0°C and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (15 cm^3) was added. The mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 10 cm^3) and the combined organic phase was dried (Na_2SO_4) and filtered. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99.5:0.5, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **76B** (0.37 g, 97%) as a white solid material. δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 8.70 (1H, br s), 7.80 (4H, m), 7.36 (4H, m), 6.98 (1H, d, *J* 8.1 Hz), 5.64 (1H, d, *J* 8.0 Hz), 5.18 (2H, m), 4.98 (1H, d, *J* 7.0 Hz), 4.39-4.32 (2H, m), 3.92-3.76 (2H, s), 2.45 (6H, s), 1.27-0.66 (28H, m). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 162.9, 149.3, 145.6, 144.8, 143.9, 132.9, 130.1, 129.9, 128.2, 128.1, 102.2, 94.6, 84.7, 80.4, 72.8, 67.8, 64.6, 21.7, 17.3, 17.2, 17.1, 16.9, 16.8, 13.1, 12.8, 12.3. FAB-MS *m/z* 825 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 99

1-(2-Deoxy-2-mercapto-2-*S*,4-*C*-methylene-3,5-*O*-(tetraisopropyldisiloxa-1,3-diyl)-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)uracil (76C). To a stirred solution of nucleoside **76B** (0.26 g, 0.32 mmol) in DMF (5 cm^3) was added potassium thioacetate (0.054 g, 0.47 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 110 °C for 20 h. After evaporation of the mixture under reduced pressure, H_2O (20 cm^3) was added. Extraction was performed with dichloromethane (3 x 10 cm^3) and the combined organic phase was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (99.25:0.75, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **76C** (0.125 g, 77%) as a white solid material. δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 8.55 (1H, br s), 8.02 (1H, d, *J* 8.1 Hz), 5.82 (1H, s, 1'-H), 5.65 (1H, d, *J* 8.1 Hz), 4.37 (1H, d, *J* 2.1 Hz), 4.10 (1H, d, *J* 13.2 Hz), 3.90 (1H, d, *J* 13.1 Hz), 3.53 (1H, d, *J* 2.1 Hz), 2.92 (1H, d, *J* 10.1 Hz), 2.74 (1H, d, *J* 10.0 Hz), 1.30-0.80 (28H, m). δ_C ($CDCl_3$)

163.2, 149.8, 139.6, 100.9, 91.4, 90.7, 71.5, 59.8, 51.5, 34.4, 17.5, 17.3, 17.1, 16.9, 15.5, 13.6, 13.3, 13.1, 12.9, 12.3. FAB-MS *m/z* 515 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 100

1-(2-Deoxy-2-mercapto-2-*S*,4-*C*-methylene-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)uracil (76D). To a stirred solution of nucleoside **76C** (25 mg, 0.049 mmol) in THF (1.0 cm^3) was added a solution of tetrabutylammonium flouride (0.20 cm^3 of a 1M solution in THF, 0.20 mmol) at 0°C. After stirring the mixture at 0°C for 1 h, H_2O (5 cm^3) was added and the mixture was evaporated. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol (97:3, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **76D** (9.0 mg, 69%) as a white solid material. δ_H (CD_3OD) 8.19 (1H, d, *J* 8.1 Hz, 6-H), 5.77 (1H, s, 1'-H), 5.65 (1H, d, *J* 8.1 Hz, 5-H), 4.31 (1H, d, *J* 2.1 Hz, 3'-H), 3.86 (2H, s, 5'-H), 3.53 (1H, d, *J* 2.2 Hz, 2'-H), 2.93 (1H, d, *J* 10.3 Hz, 1''-H_a), 2.73 (1H, d, *J* 10.3 Hz, 1''-H_b). δ_C (CD_3OD) 166.5, 152.0, 141.7, 101.2, 92.1, 92.0, 71.4, 59.9, 53.6, 35.4. FAB-MS *m/z* 273 $[M+H]^+$.

Example 101

1-(2-Deoxy-5-*O*-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityl)-2-mercapto-2-*S*,4-*C*-methylene-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)uracil (76E). To a solution of **76D** (0.2 g, 0.37 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (5 cm^3) was added 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride (0.186 g, 0.55 mmol) at room temperature. The solution was stirred for 5 h whereupon the reaction mixture was cooled to 0 °C. A saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (30 cm^3) was added and the resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 50 cm^3). The combined organic phase was separated and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography with dichloromethane/methanol/pyridine (98.5:1.0:0.5 v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **76E** as a white brownish solid material (0.175 g, 83%). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 164.5, 159.4, 151.6, 145.7, 139.9, 136.4, 136.0, 135.6, 130.9, 130.8, 128.8, 128.5, 128.4, 127.5, 127.4, 122.7, 113.9, 101.5, 91.7, 90.2, 87.6, 71.8, 61.9, 55.3, 53.7, 36.2, 30.6. FAB-MS *m/z* 574 $[M]^+$, 575 $[M+H]^+$ (Found: C, 65.2; H, 5.4; N, 5.0; $C_{31}H_{30}N_2O_7S$ requires C, 64.8; H, 5.3; N, 4.9%).

Example 102

1-(3-*O*-(2-Cyanoethoxy(diisopropylamino)phosphino)-(2-deoxy-5-*O*-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityl)-2-mercapto-2-*S*,4-*C*-methylene-β-*D*-ribofuranosyl)uracil (76F). To a solution of **76E** (0.160 g, 0.28 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (2 cm^3) at 0 °C were added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.27 cm^3) and 2-cyanoethyl *N,N*-diisopropylphosphoramidochloridite (97mg, 0.42 mmol). Stirring was continued at room temperature for 5 h. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0 °C and a saturated aqueous solutions of sodium hydrogen carbonate (30 cm^3) was added. Extraction was performed using dichloromethane (3 x 20 cm^3) and the combined organic phase was dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/methanol/pyridine (99:0.5:0:5 v/v) as eluent to give a white foam. This residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (2 cm^3) and the product was precipitated from light petroleum (100 cm^3, cooled to -40°C) under vigorous stirring. The precipitate was collected by filtration, and was finally dried to give nucleoside **76F** as a white solid material (95 mg, 44%). δ_P ($CDCl_3$) 148.9, 149.0.

Example 103

3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-1,2-*O*-isopropylidene-4-*C*-(*p*-toulenesulfonyloxymethyl)-β-D-ribofuranose (77). A solution of 3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-hydroxymethyl-1,2-*O*-isopropylidene-α-D-ribofuranose **31** (15.38 g, 38.4 mmol), anhydrous pyridine (20 cm^3) and anhydrous dichloromethane (80 ml) was stirred at -5 °C. *p*-Toulenesulphonyl chloride (8.75 g, 46.0 mmol) dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (8 cm^3) was added during 15 min. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 17 h. The reaction was quenched with ice-cold H_2O (200 cm^3). Extraction was performed with dichloromethane (5 x 150 cm^3) and the combined organic phase was washed with saturated aqueous solutions of sodium hydrogen carbonate (3 x 100 cm^3) and brine (3 x 100 cm^3), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using diclorometha ne:methanol (98.5:1.5, v/v) as eluent to give **77** as a clear oil (17.4 g, 82%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 7.79-7.19 (14H, m, Bn), 5.66 (1H, d, *J* 3.6, 1-H), 4.69-4.20 (8H, m, Bn, 5-H_a, 5-H_b, 3-H, 2-H), 3.53 (1H, d, *J* 10.3, 1'-H_a), 3.46 (1H, d, *J* 10.3, 1'-H_b), 2.40 (3H, s, CH_3), 1.29 (3H, s, CH_3), 1.26 (3H, s, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 144.6, 137.9, 137.3, 133.0, 129.8, 128.4, 128.3, 128.1, 128.0, 127.9, 127.7, 127.6 (aromatic), 113.6 ($C(CH_3)_2$), 104.2, (C-1),

84.7 (C-4), 79.0, 78.7, 73.7, 72.7, 70.7, 70.2, (Bn, C-2, C-3, C-5, C-1'), 26.3, 26.0 ($C(CH_3)_2$), 21.6 (CH_3). FAB-MS *m/z* 555 $[M+H]^+$. (Found: C, 64.8; H, 6.2; $C_{30}H_{34}O_8S$ requires C, 64.9; H, 6.1%).

Example 104

1,2-Di-*O*-acetyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-(*p*-toluenesulfonyloxymethyl)-α,β-D-ribofuranose (78). A solution of furanose **77** (17.4 g, 31.4 mmol) in 80% acetic acid (250 cm^3) was stirred at 60 °C for 20 h. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was coevaporated with toluene (3 x 20 cm^3). The residue was redissolved in anhydrous pyridine (100 cm^3). Acetic anhydride (14.2 cm^3) was added and the solution was stirred for 15 h at room temperature. The reaction was quenched by addition of ice-cold H_2O (200 cm^3), and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (4 x 150 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with saturated aqueous solutions of sodium hydrogen carbonate (2 x 125 cm^3) and brine (3 x 150 cm^3), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dicloromethane:methanol (98.5:1.5, v/v) as eluent to give **78** (α,β~1:1) as a clear oil (13.5 g, 72%). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 169.8, 169.6, 69.4, 168.8 (C=O), 144.7, 137.7, 137.5, 132.8, 129.7, 129.6, 128.5, 128.4, 128.3, 128.2, 128.0, 127.8, 127.7, 127.6 (Bn), 97.4, 94.2 (C-1), 86.4, 84.2 (C-4), 78.9, 77.5, 74.5, 74.1, 73.7, 73.5, 71.8, 70.6, 70.5, 69.6, 69.5 (Bn, C-2, C-3, C-1'), 21.6, 21.0, 20.8, 20.6, 20.4 ($COCH_3$, $C(CH_3)_2$). FAB-MS *m/z* 599 $[M+H]^+$.

Alternative procedure for the preparation of compound 78.

3-O-Benzyl-1,2:5,6-di-O-isopropylidene-α-D-glucofuranose (30B). To a solution of 1,2:5,6-Di-O-isopropylidene-α-D-allofuranose (**30A**) (obtained from Pfanstiehl Laboratories Inc.) (40 g) in dimethylformamide at 0 °C was added sodium hydride in smaller portions. The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 h, benzyl bromide was added drop wise over a period of 1 h. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 h. Methanol was added to quench the reaction and dimethylformamide was removed under pressure. The syrup was extracted with ethyl acetate and washed with brine. Evaporation of the ethyl acetate layer yielded a semisolid (93%). Homogeneous by TLC.

3-O-Benzyl-1,2-O-isopropylidene-α-D-glucofuranose (30C). Partial hydrolysis of **30B** (50 g) was achieved in 75 % acetic acid in a period of 20 h. Concentration to a smaller volume and extraction with ethyl acetate yielded **30C**, 40 g, (90 %). Homogeneous by TLC.

3-O-Benzyl-1,2-O-isopropylidene-α-D-ribo-pentodialdofuranose (30D). A solution of **30C** (40 g) in water/methanol (1:1) was slowly added with stirring to a solution of sodium periodate in water at 0 °C.The reaction was stirred for 2 h, ethylene glycol was added and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The dried extract was evaporated to yield **30D**, 32 g, (89%). Homogeneous by TLC. In this step addition of methanol is essential for the completion of the reaction.

3-O-Benzyl-4-(hydroxymethyl)-1,2-O-isopropylidene-α-D-erythro-pentofuranose (30E). Aqueous 37 % formaldehyde and 1N sodium hydroxide were added at 0 °C to a stirred solution of **30D** (32 g) in water and tetrahydrofuran (1:1), the reaction was continued for 16 h, extracted in ethyl acetate and washed with brine. Evaporation of the organic layer afforded a syrup which crystallised from ether/petroleum ether as white solid, 23 g, the filtrate was an oil which solidified as a low melting solid, 10 g, total yield of **30E**, 92%. [23 g (white solid was 99 % pure by TLC), 10 g of low melting solid (had faster moving impurities by TLC, approximately 75% pure)]. In this step addition of tetrahydrofuran is very important for the time and reaction completion.

3,5-Di-O-benzyl-4-C-hydroxymethyl-1,2-O-isopropylidene-α-D-ribofuranose (31). Benzylation of **30E** (20 g) with NaH 60 % and BnBr at -10°C yielded a mixture of two isomers. Flash column chromatography afforded **31** as the major isomer, 14 g, (54%). Homogeneous by TLC.

3,5-Di-O-benzyl-1,2-O-isopropylidene-4-C-tosyl-α-D-ribofuranose (77). A solution of **31** (12.5 g) in pyridine at 0 °C was treated with p-toluenesulphonyl chloride and the reaction was continued at room temperature for 14-16 h. Removal of pyridine, extraction with methylene chloride and saturated bicarbonate solution afforded **77**, 14 g, (80%). Homogeneous by TLC.

1,2-di-O-acetyl-3,5-di-O-benzyl-4-C-tosyl-D-ribofuranose (78). Hydrolysis of **77** (14 g) was done in 75% acetic acid at 65 °C for 18 h. The solvent was removed under pressure and the residue was treated with ethanol (3x100), toluene (3x50) and anhydrous pyridine (2x50). (This compound **78** crystallised from petroleum ether as fine white solid.) The residue was taken in dry pyridine and treated with acetic anhydride at room temperature for 8 h. Extraction with ethyl acetate and saturated bicarbonate followed by washing with brine afforded **78** as a mixture of α and β anomers, 12g, (83%). A direct comparison with an authentic sample of **78** (TLC, HPLC, NMR) confirmed its identity and purity.

Example 105

1-(2-*O*-Acetyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-(*p*-toulenesulfonyloxymethyl)-β-D-ribofuranosyl)-thymine (79). To a stirred solution of the anomeric mixture **78** (12.8 g, 21.4 mmol) and thymine (5.38 g, 42.7 mmol) in anhydrous acetonitrile (182 cm^3) was added *N,O*-bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (31.68 ml, 128.23 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 h at room temperature, and stirring was continued at 60 °C for 1.5 h. After cooling to 0 °C, trimethylsilyl triflate (6.57 ml, 30.33 mmol) was added dropwise, and the mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 10 h. The reaction mixture was neutralised with an ice-cold saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (90 mL). The reaction mixture was filtered, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to half volume. Extraction was performed using dichloromethane (4 x 200 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with saturated aqueous solutions of sodium hydrogen carbonate (3 x 150 cm^3) and brine (3 x 150 ml), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dicloromethane:methanol (99:1 to 98:2, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **79** as a white solid material (13.1 g, 92%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 9.04 (s, 1H, NH), 7.73-7.19 (15H, m, 6-H, aromatic), 5.94 (1H, d, *J* 5.5, 1'-H), 5.37 (1H, d, *J* 5.6, 2'-H), 4.57-4.40 (5H, m, 3'-H, 5'-H_a, 5'-H_b, Bn), 4.14 (2H, s, Bn), 3.75 (1H, d, *J* 10.2, 1''-H_a), 3.57 (1H, d, *J* 10.2, 1''-H_b), 2.41 (3H, s, $CH_3C_6H_5$), 2.02 (3H, s, $COCH_3$), 1.54 (3H, s, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 169.8 (C=O), 163.5 (C-4), 150.2 (C-2), 145.0, 136.8, 135.6, 132.1, 129.7, 128.5, 128.0, 127.9, 127.8, 127.5 (aromatic), 113.5 (C-5), 86.8, 85.3, 77.6, 74.6, 74.3, 73.6, 70.8, 68.8 (Bn, C-1', C-3', C-2', C-4'), 21.3 (CH_3), 20.5 ($COCH_3$), 11.8 (CH_3). FAB-MS *m/z* 665 $[M+H]^+$ (Found C, 61.2; H, 5.3; N, 4.1; S, 4.7, $C_{34}H_{36}O_{10}N_2S$ requires C, 61.4; H, 5.4; N, 4.2; S, 4.8).

Example 106

1-(3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-(*p*-toulenesulfonyloxymethyl)-β-D-ribofuranosyl)thymine (80). Nucleoside **79** (13.1 g, 19.7 mmol) was dissolved in a solution of ammonia in methanol (200 cm^3, prepared by diluting saturated methanolic ammonia with an equal volume of methanol) and stirred at room temperature for 4 h. The reaction mixture was subsequently evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (400 cm^3). The organic phase was washed with brine (3 x 150 cm^3), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dicloromethane:methanol (99.5:0.5, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **80** as a white solid material (10.7 g, 87%). δ_H ($CDCl_3$) 9.66 (s, 1H, NH), 7.71-7.21 (15H, m, 6-H, aromatic), 5.72 (1H, d, *J* 5.1, 1'-H), 4.75, 4.55 (2H, each d, *J* 11.5, Bn), 4.51 (2H, s, Bn), 4.37 (1H, t, *J* 5.4, 2'-H), 4.30-4.12 (3H, m, 3'-H, Bn), 3.76 (1H, d, *J* 10.2, 1''-H_a), 3.59 (1H, d, *J* 10.2, 1''-H_b), 2.39 (3H, s, $CH_3C_6H_5$), 1.48 (3H, s, CH_3). δ_C ($CDCl_3$) 163.8 (C-4), 150.9 (C-2), 145.0, 137.0, 136.9, 135.9, 132.3, 129.8, 128.7, 128.6, 128.2, 128.1, 128.0, 127.6 (aromatic), 111.0 (C-5), 89.6, 85.3, 78.4, 74.5, 73.8, 71.1, 69.7, (Bn, C-1', C-3', C-2', C-4', C-1''), 21.6 (CH_3), 12.0 (CH_3). FAB-MS *m/z* 623 $[M+H]^+$ (Found C, 61.5; H, 5.2; N, 4.4; S, 5.2, $C_{32}H_{34}O_9N_2S$ requires C, 61.7; H, 5.4; N, 4.5; S, 5.1).

Example 107

***(1S,3R,4R,7S)*-7-Benzyloxy-1-benzoyloxymethyl-3-(thymin-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo-[2.2.1]heptane (36).** To a stirred solution of nucleoside **80** (10.65 g, 17.1 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (150 cm^3) was added a 60% suspension of sodium hydride in mineral oil (0.9 g, 22.2 mmol) in small portions at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 15 h whereupon additional 60% sodium hydride (0.205 g, 5.12 mmol) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred for additional 22 h at 0 °C. Methanol (20 cm^3) was added and the reaction mixture was subsequently concentrated under reduced pressure to half volume. Ice-cold H_2O (300 cm^3) was added and extraction was performed with dichloromethane (5 x 150 cm^3). The combined organic phase was washed with saturated aqueous solutions of sodium hydrogen carbonate (3 x 40 cm^3) and brine (3 x 40 cm^3), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane:methanol (99.5:0.5, v/v) as eluent to give nucleoside **36** as a white

solid material (7.1 g, 92%). Spectral data were in accordance with data given earlier for **36** (Found C, 66.2; H, 5.8; N, 6.1; $C_{25}H_{26}N_2O_6$ requires C, 66.6; H, 5.8; N, 6.2).

Example 108

3,5-Di-*O*-benzyl-1,2-*O*-isopropylidene-4-*C*-methanesulfonyloxymethyl-α-D-ribofuranose (200). To a stirred solution of furanose **31** (2.16 g, 5.39 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (3 mL) at 0°C was added dropwise methanesulfonyl chloride (0.61 mL, 16.0 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred for 20 min at room temperature, quenched with ice-cold water (300 mL) and extracted with dichloromethane (2x300 mL). The combined extracts were washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate (300 mL) and then dried ($MgSO_4$). The solvent was removed by distillation under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by chromatography over silica gel with dichloromethane as eluent to give the product **200** as a clear oil (2.55 g, 99%); ^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.37-7.24 (10 H, m, Bn), 5.78 (1 H, d, *J* 3.8 Hz, H-1), 4.85 (1 H, d, *J* 11.7 Hz, Bn), 4.73 (1 H, d, *J* 11.9 Hz, Bn), 4.64 (1 H, dd, *J* 4.0, 5.3 Hz, H-2), 4.54 (1 H, d, *J* 11.9 Hz, H-5'), 4.52 (1 H, d, *J* 11.9 Hz, Bn), 4.46 (1 H, d, *J* 11.9 Hz, H-5'), 4.41 (1 H, d, *J* 11.8 Hz, Bn), 3.60 (1 H, d, *J* 10.4 Hz, H-5), 3.50 (1 H, d, *J* 10.5 Hz, H-5), 3.06 (3 H, s, SO_2CH_3), 1.68 (3 H, s, CH_3), 1.34 (3 H, s, CH_3); ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 137.79, 137.31, 128.54, 128.48, 128.16, 128.01, 127.87, 127.79 (Bn), 113.66 ($C(CH_3)_2$), 104.46 (C-1), 84.88 (C-4), 78.48, 78.41 (C-2, C-3), 73.65, 72.63, 70.78, 70.16 (Bn, C-5, C-5'), 37.84 (SO_2CH_3), 26.20 (CH_3), 25.69 (CH_3); MS FAB: 501 (M+Na, 100%). Found: C, 60.37; H, 6.29; S, 6.53; $C_{24}H_{30}O_8S$ requires C, 60.24; H, 6.32; S, 6.70 %.

Example 109

Methyl 3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-methanesulfonyloxymethyl-α-D-ribofuranoside (201). A solution of furanose **200** (1.133 g, 2.37 mmol) in methanolic hydrochloric acid (20% w/w, 31.7 mL) and water (4.4 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 2 h. After neutralisation with sodium hydrogen carbonate (s), the solution was extracted with dichloromethane (2x150 mL). The combined extracts were washed with water (150 mL) and then dried ($MgSO_4$). The solvent was removed by distillation under reduced pressure and the residue purified by chromatography over silica gel with dichloro-methane:methanol (99:1) as eluent to give the product **201** (β:α ~ 2:1) as a clear oil (1.018 g, 95%); ^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.39-7.22 (m, Bn), 4.86 (br s, Bn), 4.69-3.99 (m,

Bn, H-5', H-1, H-2, H-3), 3.68 (d, *J* 8.9 Hz, H-5 β), 3.51 (d, *J* 9.8 Hz, H-5 α), 3.46 (s, OCH_3 α), 3.34 (d, *J* 9.1 Hz, H-5 β), 3.32 (d, *J* 9.7 Hz, H-5 α), 3.28 (s, OCH_3 β), 2.97 (3 H, s, SO_2CH_3 β), 2.93 (3 H, s, SO_2CH_3 α); ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 137.74, 136.98, 128.70, 128.64, 128.58, 128.56, 128.37, 128.21, 128.15, 128.09, 127.98, 127.86, 127.83 (Bn), 107.54 (C-1 β), 103.39 (C-1 α), 84.65, 83.18, 81.90, 78,87 (C-4, C-3), 75.04, 74.07, 73.73, 73.70, 73.38, 72.56, 72.11, 70.85, 70.55, 70.20 (C-2, Bn, C-5, C-5'), 55.90 (OCH_3 α), 54.96 (OCH_3 β), 37.18 (SO_2CH_3 β), 37.07 (SO_2CH_3 α); MS FAB: 475 (M+Na, 25%). Found: C, 58.40; H, 6.33; $C_{24}H_{30}O_8S$ requires C, 58.39; H, 6.24 %.

Example 110

(*3R*)- and (*3S*)-(*1S,4R,7S*)-7-Benzyloxy-1-benzyloxymethyl-3-methoxy-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (202 and 203). A solution of **201** (3.32 g, 7.34 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (25 mL) was stirred at 0°C and a 60% oil dispersion of sodium hydride (700 mg, 16.9 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 90 min, quenched with water (300 mL) and extracted with diethyl ether (2x300 mL). The combined extract was washed with water (200 mL) and dried ($MgSO_4$). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by chromatography over silica gel with dichloromethane as eluent to give the two products **202** and **203** as clear oils (1.571 g, 60% and 0.777 g, 30% respectively). **(*1S,3R,4R,7S*)-7-Benzyloxy-1-benzyloxymethyl-3-methoxy-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (202).** ^1H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.36-7.26 (10 H, m, Bn), 4.81 (1 H, s, H-1), 4.65 (1 H, d, *J* 11.9 Hz, Bn), 4.61 (2 H, s, Bn), 4.56 (1 H, d, *J* 11.9 Hz, Bn), 4.11 (1 H, s, H-2), 4.09 (1 H, s, H-3), 4.01 (1 H, d, *J* 7.5 Hz, H-5'), 3.80-3.77 (3 H, m, H-5', H-5), 3.39 (3 H, s, OCH_3); ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 138.05, 137.36, 128.47, 128.44, 127.88, 127.73, 127.63 (Bn), 104.97 (C-1), 85.13 (C-4), 79.16 (C-3), 77.18 (C-2), 73.64 (Bn), 72.26, 72.10 (Bn, C-5'), 66.50 (C-5), 55.34 (OCH_3); MS FAB: 379 (M+Na, 28%). Found: C, 70.55; H, 6.97; $C_{21}H_{24}O_5$ requires C, 70.77; H, 6.79 %. **(*1S,3R,4R,7S*)-7-Benzyloxy-1-benzyloxymethyl-3-methoxy-2,5-dioxabicyclo-[2.2.1]heptane (203).** ^1H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.36-7.26 (10 H, m, Bn), 5.00 (1 H, s, H-1), 4.67-4.54 (4 H, m, Bn), 4.18 (1 H, s, H-2), 3.99 (1 H, s, H-3), 3.99-3.90 (2 H, m, H-5'), 3.75-3.68 (2 H, m, H-5), 3.49 (3 H, s, OCH_3); ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 137.83, 137.53, 128.51, 128.48, 127.96, 127.82, 127.71, 127.62 (Bn), 104.05 (C-1),

88.44 (C-4), 79.54 (C-3), 77.16 (C-2), 73.68 (Bn), 72.61 (C-5'), 72.24 (Bn), 65.73 (C-5), 56.20 (OCH_3); MS FAB: 379 (M+Na, 100%).

Example 111

***(1R,2S,3S)*-2-Benzyloxy-3-benzyloxymethyl-1-(methoxy(thymin-1-yl)methyl)-3-trimethylsilyloxytetrahydrofuran (204).** A solution of **202** (216 mg, 0.606 mmol) and thymine (153 mg, 1.22 mmol) in anhydrous acetonitrile (9.3 mL) was added BSA (*N,O*-bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide, 0.90 mL, 3.6 mmol) and stirred under reflux for 15 min. The solution was cooled to 0°C and trimethylsilyl triflate (0.153 mL, 0.777 mmol) was added dropwise. After stirring at room temperature for 18 h and at 60°C for 24 h, the reaction was quenched with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (20 mL), and extraction was performed using dichloromethane (2x50 mL). The combined extract was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (50 mL) and dried ($MgSO_4$). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by chromatography over silica gel with dichloromethane:methanol (98:2) as eluent to give the product **204** (mixture of diastereomers ~ 1.7:1) as a solid (196 mg, 67%). ^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.36-7.14 (m, Bn, H-6), 5.77 (1 H, d, *J* 7.9 Hz, H-1'), 5.57 (1 H, d, *J* 5.8 Hz, H-1'), 4.68-4.43 (m, Bn, H-2'), 4.12-3.68 (m, H-5', H-5', H-3'), 3.32 (s, OCH_3), 3.24 (s, OCH_3), 1.93 (d, *J* 0.9 Hz, CH_3), 1.86 (d, *J* 1.1 Hz, CH_3), 0.14 (s, $Si(CH_3)_3$), 0.12 (s, $Si(CH_3)_3$); ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 163.68, 163.55 (C-4), 151.58, 151.07 (C-2), 137.84, 137.74, 137.32 (Bn), 135.93, 135.10 (C-6), 128.57, 128.42, 128.41, 128.10, 127.95, 127.85, 127.77, 127.74 (Bn), 111.38, 111.01 (C-5), 86.89, 85.61, 85.40, 84.72, 83.40, 83.31, 82.10 (C-1', C-2', C-3', C-4'), 75.20, 73.98, 73.62, 73.59, 72.55, 72.13, 71.04, 70.74 (Bn, C-5', C-5''), 56.82, 56.54 (OCH_3), 12.47, 12.38 (CH_3), 1.72, 1.69 ($Si(CH_3)_3$); MS FAB: 555 (M+H, 65%), 577 (M+Na, 70%). Found: C, 62.76; H, 6.88; N, 4.94; $C_{29}H_{38}N_2O_7Si$ requires C, 62.79; H, 6.90; N, 5.05 %.

Example 112

***(1R,2S,3S)*-2-Benzyloxy-3-benzyloxymethyl-1-(methoxy(6-*N*-benzoyladenin-9-yl)-methyl)-3-trimethylsilyloxytetrahydrofuran (205).** A solution of **202** (240 mg, 0.673 mmol) and 6-*N*-benzoyladenine (301 mg, 1.26 mmol) in anhydrous acetonitrile (8.2 mL) was added BSA (0.67 mL, 2.7 mmol) and stirred at room temperature for 1 h. The solution was cooled to 0°C and trimethylsilyl triflate (0.25 mL, 1.33 mmol) was

added dropwise. After stirring at 65°C for 18 h, the reaction was quenched with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (50 mL), extracted with dichloromethane (2x50 mL). The combined extract was dried ($MgSO_4$). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by chromatography over silica gel with dichloromethane:methanol (98:2) as eluent to give the product **205** (mixture of diastereomers ~ 1.8:1) as a solid (185 mg, 41%). ^1H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 8.78 (s, H-8), 8.21 (s, H-2), 8.17 (s, H-2), 8.03-8.00 (m, Bz), 7.61-7.49 (m, Bz), 7.36-7.23 (m, Bn), 7.07-7.04 (m, Bz), 5.85 (1 H, d, *J* 7.9 Hz, H-1'), 5.76 (1 H, d, *J* 6.0 Hz, H-1'), 4.74-4.40 (m, Bn, H-2'), 4.22-3.62 (m, H-5', H-5', H-3'), 3.33 (s, OCH_3), 3.24 (s, OCH_3), 0.15 (s, $Si(CH_3)_3$), 0.14 (s, $Si(CH_3)_3$); ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 164.68 (HNC=O), 153.17, 152.99 (C-6), 149.47 (C-2), 141.82, 141.66 (C-8), 137.74, 137.71, 137.65 (Bn), 133.87, 132.87, 132.78 (Bz), 128.97, 128.93, 128.45, 128.42, 128.38, 128.14, 127.97, 127.88, 127.82, 127.78 (Bn, Bz), 123.66, 122.85 (C-5), 86.41, 86.23, 85.70, 85.24, 84.78, 83.73, 83.58, 82.79 (C-1', C-2', C-3', C-4'), 75.32, 74.55, 73.61, 72.18, 71.98, 70.85, 70.59 (Bn, C-5', C-5''), 57.23, 57.04 (OCH_3), 1.78 ($Si(CH_3)_3$); MS FAB: 668 (M+H, 50%), 690 (M+Na, 100%). Found: C, 64.07; H, 6.01; N, 9.94; $C_{29}H_{38}N_2O_7Si,0.5H_2O$ requires C, 63.88; H, 6.25; N, 10.34 %.

Example 113

***(1R,2R,3R)*-2-Benzyloxy-3-benzyloxymethyl-3-hydroxytetrahydrofurfural (206).** A solution of **202/203** (252 mg, 0.707 mmol) in 80% acetic acid (3.8 mL) was stirred at 90°C for 2 h whereupon the solvent was removed by distillation under reduced pressure. The residue was coevaporated in toluene (3x10 mL) to give the product **206** as an oil (242 mg, 100%). ^1H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 9.66 (1 H, d, *J* 0.8 Hz, H-1), 7.36-7.25 (10 H, m, Bn), 4.68 (1 H, d, *J* 11.9 Hz, Bn), 4.60-4.39 (5 H, m, Bn, H-2, H-3), 3.98-3.92 (2 H, m, H-5), 3.85 (1 H, d, *J* 9.3 Hz, H-5'), 3.52 (1 H, d, *J* 9.2 Hz, H-5'); ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 203.64 (C-1), 137.39, 137.19, 128.61, 128.54, 128.29, 128.12, 127.87, 127.83 (Bn), 87.17, 87.05 (C-4, C-2), 80.98 (C-3), 75.00, 73.70, 71.86 (Bn, C-5'), 67.84 (C-5); MS FAB: 707 (2xM+Na, 100%).

Example 114

***(1S,3S,4R,7S)*-3-Acetoxy-7-benzyloxy-1-benzyloxymethyl-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]-heptane (207).** To a stirred solution of **206** (230 mg, 0.672 mmol) in anhydrous

pyridine (2.0 mL) was added acetic anhydride (0.18 mL, 1.91 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred for 23 h at room temperature, water (0.13 mL) was added, and the solvent was removed by distillation under reduced pressure. The residue was coevaporated in toluene (3x10 mL) and purified by chromatography over silica gel with dichloromethane:methanol (99:1) as eluent to give the product **207** as an clear oil (56.7 mg, 23%); ^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.38-7.26 (10 H, m, Bn), 6.00 (1 H, s, H-1), 4.68 (1 H, d, *J* 12.0 Hz, Bn), 4.62 (1 H, d, *J* 12.2 Hz, Bn), 4.60 (1 H, d, *J* 12.4 Hz, Bn), 4.56 (1 H, d, *J* 12.2 Hz, Bn), 4.17 (1 H, s, H-2), 4.14 (1 H, s, H-3), 4.01 (1 H, d, *J* 7.7 Hz, H-5'), 3.81-3.78 (3 H, m, H-5', H-5), 20.06 (3 H, s, $COCH_3$); ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 169.18 (C=O), 137.92, 137.48, 128.52, 128.45, 128.03, 127.77, 127.73, 127.68 (Bn), 95.95 (C-1), 86.49 (C-4), 78.27, 76.58 (C-3, C-2), 73.65 (Bn), 72.26, 71.96 (Bn, C-5'), 65.49 (C-5), 20.98 ($COCH_3$); MS FAB: 407 (M+Na, 55%). Found: C, 68.80; H, 6.11; $C_{22}H_{24}O_6$ requires C, 68.74; H, 6.29 %.

Example 115

(*1S,3S,4R,7S*)-3-(6-*N*-Benzoyladenin-9-yl)-7-benzyloxy-1-benzyloxymethyl-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (208). A solution of furanose **207** (167 mg, 0.434 mmol) and 6-*N*-benzoyladenine (194 mg, 0.813 mmol) in anhydrous acetonitrile (5.3 mL) was added BSA (0.43 mL, 1.76 mmol) and stirred at room temperature for 1 h. The solution was cooled to 0 °C and trimethylsilyl triflate (0.16 mL, 0.86 mmol) was added dropwise. After stirring at 65 °C for 2 h, the reaction was quenched with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (40 mL) and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (2x50 mL). The combined extract was dried ($MgSO_4$). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by chromatography over silica gel with dichloromethane:methanol (98:2) as eluent to give the product **208** as a solid (111 mg, 45%); ^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 8.82 (1 H, s, H-8), 8.14 (1 H, s, H-2), 7.59-7.26 (15 H, m, Bz, Bn), 6.74(1 H, s, H-1'), 4.92 (1 H, s, H-2'), 4.74-4.39 (4 H, m, Bn), 4.42 (1 H, s, H-3'), 4.19-4.10 (2 H, m, H-5''), 3.92 (1 H, d, *J* 11.8 Hz, H-5'), 3.88 (1 H, d, *J* 11.5 Hz, H-5'); MS FAB: 564 (M+H, 100%).

Example 116

Methyl 2-*O*-acetyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-methanesulfonyloxymethyl-D-ribofuranoside (209). To a stirred solution of **201** (687 mg, 1.52 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (4 mL)

at 0°C was added dropwise acetic anhydride (0.43 mL, 4.56 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 days at room temperature, quenched with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate (75 mL) and extracted with dichloromethane (150 + 75 mL). The combined extract was dried ($MgSO_4$), the solvent was removed by distillation under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by chromatography over silica gel with dichloromethane as eluent to give the product **209** as a clear oil (β:α ~ 3:1, 750 mg, 100 %); MS FAB: 463 (M-OCH_3, 100%), 517 (M+Na, 28%); Found: C, 58.53; H, 6.16; $C_{24}H_{30}O_9S$ requires C, 58.29; H, 6.11 %. **Methyl 2-*O*-acetyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-methanesulfonyloxymethyl-β-D-ribofuranoside (209β).** ^1H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.36-7.18 (10 H, m, Bn), 5.27 (1 H, d, *J* 4.9 Hz, H-2), 4.88 (1 H, s, H-1), 4.55-4.44 (6 H, m, H-5', Bn), 4.35 (1 H, d, *J* 5.0 Hz, H-3), 3.73 (1 H, d, *J* 9.2 Hz, H-5), 3.38 (1 H, d, *J* 9.3 Hz, H-5), 3.30 (3 H, s, OCH_3), 2.95 (3 H, s, SO_2CH_3), 2.11 (3 H, s, $OCCH_3$); ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 169.91 (C=O), 137.83, 137.28, 128.49, 128.44, 127.99, 127.87, 127.77 (Bn), 105.40 (C-1), 82.65, 81.05, 74.55, 73.62, 73.56, 71.86, 70.22 (C-2, C-3, C-4, C-5, C-5', Bn), 55.03 (OCH_3), 37.14 (SO_2CH_3), 20.73 ($OCCH_3$). **Methyl 2-*O*-acetyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-methanesulfonyloxymethyl-α-D-ribofuranoside (209α).** ^1H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.36-7.18 (10 H, m, Bn), 5.09 (1 H, d, *J* 4.5 Hz, H-1), 4.95 (1 H, dd, *J* 4.5, 6.8 Hz, H-2), 4.65-4.44 (6 H, m, H-5', Bn), 4.27 (1 H, d, *J* 6.6 Hz, H-3), 3.49 (1 H, d, *J* 9.9 Hz, H-5), 3.46 (3 H, s, OCH_3), 3.36 (1 H, d, *J* 9.9 Hz, H-5), 2.92 (3 H, s, SO_2CH_3), 2.14 (3 H, s, $OCCH_3$); ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 170.41 (C=O), 137.59, 137.28, 128.56, 128.51, 128.49, 128.44, 127.98, 127.88 (Bn), 102.35 (C-1), 84.25, 77.53, 74.66, 73.67, 72.12, 70.39, 70.28 (C-2, C-3, C-4, C-5, C-5', Bn), 56.07 (OCH_3), 36.94 (SO_2CH_3), 20.63 ($OCCH_3$).

Example 117

Phenyl 2-*O*-acetyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-methanesulfonyloxymethyl-1-thio-β-D-ribofuranoside (210). *Method a*. A stirred solution of **209** (738 mg, 1.49 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (6.4 mL) was added phenylthiotrimethylsilane (2.42 mL, 12.8 mmol) and cooled to 0°C. Trimethylsilyl triflate (0.67 mL, 3.67 mmol) was added dropwise and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 4 h. The reaction was quenched with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (100 mL) and extracted with dichloromethane (2x200 mL). The combined extract was dried ($MgSO_4$) and the solvent removed by distillation under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by chromatography over silica gel with dichloromethane as eluent to give

the product **210** as a clear oil (564 mg, 66%) and unreacted starting material (191 mg, 26%); *Method b.* A stirred solution of **211** (86 mg, 0.165 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (0.49 mL) was added phenylthiotrimethylsilane (0.16 mL, 0.825 mmol) and cooled to 0°C. Trimethylsilyl triflate (0.037 mL, 0.206 mmol) was added and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 h. The reaction was quenched with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (15 mL) and the resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (2x25 mL). The combined extract was dried ($MgSO_4$) and the solvent removed by distillation under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by chromatography over silica gel with dichloromethane as eluent to give the product **210** as a clear oil (75 mg, 79%); ^1H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.47-7.19 (15 H, m, Bn, SPh), 5.48 (1 H, d, *J* 3.6 Hz, H-2), 5.34 (1 H, dd, *J* 3.7, 5.2 Hz, H-1), 4.54-4.36 (7 H, m, H-3, H-5', Bn), 3.66 (1 H, d, *J* 9.7 Hz, H-5), 3.48 (1 H, d, *J* 9.5 Hz, H-5), 2.89 (3 H, s, SO_2CH_3), 2.09 (3 H, s, $OCCH_3$); ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 169.93 (C=O), 137.69, 137.08, 132.65, 132.45, 129.15, 128.53, 128.52, 128.18, 128.14, 128.08, 127.91, 127.85 (Bn, SPh), 87.99, 84.35, 80.34, 75.33, 74.20, 73.67, 70.83, 69.34 (C-1, C-2, C-3, C-4, C-5, C-5', Bn), 37.27 (SO_2CH_3), 20.68 ($OCCH_3$); MS FAB: 463 (M-SPh, 100%), 595 (M+Na, 24%); Found: C, 61.17; H, 5.55; $C_{29}H_{32}O_8S_2$ requires C, 60.82; H, 5.63 %.

Example 118

1,2-Di-*O*-acetyl-3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-4-*C*-methanesulphonyloxymethyl-D-ribofuranose (211). A solution of **201** (150 mg; 0.313 mmol) in 80% aqueous acetic acid (1.5 mL) was stirred at 90°C for 3 h. The solvent was removed by distillation under reduced pressure and the residue was coevaporated in ethanol (3x5 mL), toluene (3x5 mL) and pyridine (2x5 mL). The residue was redissolved in anhydrous pyridine (0.62 mL) and added acetic anhydride (0.47 mL) and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 16 h. The reaction was quenched with water (50 mL) and the resulting mixture extracted with dichloromethane (2x50 mL). The combined extract was washed with an aqueous saturated solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (50 mL) and dried ($MgSO_4$). The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified on column chromatography over silica gel with dichloromethane as eluent to give the product **211** as an oil (99 mg, 60%); ^1H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.39-7.21 (m, Bn), 6.38 (d, *J* 4.6 Hz, H-1 β), 6.15 (s, H-1 α), 5.35 (d, *J* 4.9 Hz, H-2 α), 5.17 (dd, *J* 6.3, 4.9 Hz, H-2 β), 4.69-4.23 (m, H-3, Bn), 3.64 (d, *J* 9.7 Hz, H-5 α), 3.52 (d, *J* 10.1 Hz, H-2 β), 3.45

(d, *J* 9.7 Hz, H-5 α), 3.39 (d, *J* 9.9 Hz, H-2 β), 2.99 (s, SO_2CH_3 α), 2.96 (s, SO_2CH_3 β), 2.14, 2.13, 2.06, 1.90 (4xs, $COCH_3$); ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 169.68, 169.00 (C=O), 137.68, 137.05, 128.60, 128.55, 128.50, 128.21, 128.12, 128.04, 127.94, 127.82, 127.79 (Bn), 99.35 (C-1 α), 94.24 (C-1 β), 86.36 (C-4 β), 84.28 (C-4 α), 79.15, 77.47, 74.58, 74.06, 73.73, 73.56, 71.67, 70.57, 70.19, 69.84 (Bn, C-2, C-3, C-5, C-5'), 37.61 (SO_2CH_3 β), 37.48 (SO_2CH_3 α), 21.07, 20.74, 20.63, 20.39 ($COCH_3$); MS FAB: 545 (M+Na, 13%). Found: C, 57.70; H, 5.56; $C_{25}H_{30}O_{10}S$ requires C, 57.46; H, 5.79 %.

Example 119

***(3R)*- and *(3S)*-*(1S,4R,7S)*-7-Benzyloxy-1-benzyloxymethyl-3-phenylthio-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (212).** A solution of **210** (553 mg, 0.966 mmol) in methanol saturated with ammonia (35 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 2 h whereupon the solvent removed by distillation under reduced pressure. The residue was redissolved in anhydrous DMF (3.5 mL) and the solution stirred at 0°C. A 60% suspension of sodium hydride (118 mg, 2.88 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 12 h. The reaction was quenched with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (100 mL) and the resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (2x100 mL). The combined extract was dried ($MgSO_4$) and the solvent was removed by distillation under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by chromatography over silica gel with dichloromethane as eluent to give the product **212** as a clear oil (404 mg, 96%). MS FAB: 435 (M+H, 35%), 457 (M+Na, 16%); Found: C, 71.76; H, 6.18; $C_{26}H_{26}O_4S$ requires C, 71.86; H, 6.03 %.

***(1S,3R,4R,7S)*-7-Benzyloxy-1-benzyloxymethyl-3-phenylthio-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]-heptane (212β).** ^1H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.46-7.26 (15 H, m, Bn, SPh), 5.35 (1 H, s, H-1), 4.68-4.56 (4 H, m, Bn), 4.31 (1 H, s, H-2), 4.10 (1 H, s, H-3), 4.09 (1 H, d, *J* 7.3 Hz, H-5'), 3.93 (1 H, d, *J* 7.8 Hz, H-5'), 3.79 (2 H, m, H-5); ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 138.03, 137.45, 133.42, 132.36, 129.19, 128.55, 128.46, 128.05, 127.84, 127.83, 127.76 (Bn, SPh), 89.96 (C-1), 87.18 (C-4), 79.71 (C-2), 79.40 (C-3), 73.64 (Bn), 73.23 (C-5'), 72.30 (Bn), 66.31 (C-5). ***(1S,3S,4R,7S)*-7-Benzyloxy-1-benzyloxymethyl-3-phenylthio-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (212α).** ^1H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.52-7.19 (15 H, m, Bn, SPh), 5.52 (1 H, s, H-1), 4.70-4.50 (4 H, m, Bn), 4.41 (1 H, s, H-2), 4.18 (1 H, d, *J* 7.8 Hz, H-5'), 4.08 (1 H, d, *J* 8.4 Hz, H-5'), 4.07 (1 H, s, H-3), 3.78 (1 H, d, *J* 11.3 Hz, H-5), 3.72 (1 H, d, *J* 11.5 Hz, H-5); ^{13}C NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 137.89,

137.46, 135.29, 130.93, 129.13, 128.99, 128.57, 128.48, 127.81, 127.76, 127.58, 126.95 (Bn, SPh), 91.87 (C-1), 88.59 (C-4), 80.07, 79.14 (C-2, C-3), 73.65, 73.40, 72.04 (Bn, C-5'), 65.62 (C-5).

Example 120

***(3R)*- and *(3S)*-(*1S,4R,7S*)-7-Benzyloxy-1-benzyloxymethyl-3-(thymin-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (36 + 213).** Thymine (175 mg, 1.38 mmol) was stirred in hexamethyldisilazane (6.8 mL) at reflux and ammonium sulphate (5 mg) was added. After stirring for 16 h, the clear solution was cooled to 40°C and the solvent was removed by distillation under reduced pressure. To the residue was added a solution of **212** (201 mg, 0.463 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (4.6 mL) and 4Å molecular sieves (180 mg). After stirring at room temperature for 10 min, NBS (107 mg, 0.602 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred for another 30 min. The reaction was quenched with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium thiosulphate (25 mL) and the resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (2x50 mL). The combined extract was dried ($MgSO_4$) and evaporated, and the residue was purified on column chromatography over silica gel with dichloromethane:methanol (97:3) as eluent to give the product **36 + 213** and as an anomeric mixture (β:α~1:2) (127 mg, 61%); ^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.49 (d, *J* 0.9 Hz, H-6 β), 7.46 (d, *J* 1.0 Hz, H-6 α), 7.39-7.25 (m, Bn), 5.94 (s, H-1' α), 5.64 (s, H-1' β), 4.71-4.50 (m, Bn, H-2'), 4.23 (s, H-3' α), 4.16 (d, *J* 8.6 Hz, H-5"α), 4.09-3.78 (m, H-5', H-5", H-3'β), 1.94 (d, *J* 0.9 Hz, CH_3 α), 1.62 (d, *J* 1.2 Hz, CH_3 β); MS FAB: 551 (M+H, 96%).

Example 121

***(3R)*- and *(3S)*-(*1S,4R,7S*)-7-Hydroxy-1-hydroxymethyl-3-(thymin-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (37 + 214).** A solution of **36 + 213** (175 mg, 0.39 mmol) in ethanol (2.7 mL) was stirred at room temperature and 20% palladium hydroxide over carbon (50 mg) was added. The mixture was degassed several times with argon and placed under a hydrogen atmosphere. After stirring for 18 h, the mixture was purified on column chromatography over silica gel with dichloromethane:methanol (95:5) as eluent to give a mixture of **37** and **214** (1:1.2) (26 mg, 25%); ^{1}H NMR (CD_3OD): δ 7.78 (d, *J* 1.3 Hz, H-6 α), 7.73 (d, *J* 1.2 Hz, H-6 β), 5.88 (s, H-1' α), 5.53 (s, H-1' β), 4.38 (s, H-2' α), 4.34 (s, H-3' α), 4.26 (s, H-2' β), 4.08-3.69 (m, H-5', H-5", H-3'β), 1.92 (d, *J* 1.2 Hz, CH_3 α), 1.88 (d, *J* 1.1 Hz, CH_3 β); ^{13}C NMR (CD_3OD): δ 138.00 (C-

6 α), 136.96 (C-6 β), 110.80 (C-5 β), 110.08 (C-5 α), 92.49, 89.01 (C-4', C-1' α), 90.46, 88.37 (C-4', C-1' β), 80.89, 74.27, 73.34 (C-2', C-3', C-5' α), 80.59, 72.47, 70.39 (C-2', C-3', C-5' β), 59.29 (C-5" α), 57.61 (C-5" β), 12.52 (CH_3 α), 12.39 (CH_3 β); MS EI: 270 (M^+, 100%).

Preparation of LNA phosphoramidites

Example 122

4-N-Benzoyl-LNA-C [(1R, 3R, 4R, 7S)-3-(4-N-benzoylcytosine-1-yl)-1-(hydroxymethyl)-7-hydroxy-2,5-dioxabicyclo {2.2.1} heptane]. LNA-C (formula Z) was taken in absolute ethanol and heated at reflux. To the refluxing solution, benzoic anhydride (2 equivalents) was added and the reaction was followed by HPLC (Eluant: 20% acetonitrile in 0.1M TEAA, pH 7.0, flow rate: 1ml/min., Novapak C-18 analytical column). Additional anhydride was added at 0.5-2h intervals till no more increase in product was observed by HPLC. Reaction mixture was concentrated on rotavap. Residue was repeatedly washed with ether, filtered and dried to give an off white solid. Yield: 45%.

General method for dimethoxytritylation of base protected LNA nucleosides (LNA-C^{Bz}, LNA-T, LNA-G^{iBu}, LNA-A^{Bz}). Base protected LNA-nucleoside was coevaporated with pyridine (2x) and was stirred with dimethoxytrityl chloride (1.5 equivalents) in pyridine (~10 ml/g of nucleoside). The reaction was followed by HPLC (50% acetonitrile in 0.1M TEAA, pH 7.0, for 5 min., 50-100% acetonitrile in 10 min. and 100% acetonitrile for 5 min., flow rate: 1 ml/min., Novapak C-18 column). When >95% of the starting material had reacted, reaction mixture was cooled in ice. Reaction was quenched by addition of cold saturated $NaHCO_3$ (~15 ml x vol. of pyridine). The mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x half the vol. of sodium bicarbonate). Organic extractions were combined, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated on rotavap. Residue was dried *in vacuo* and purified by silica gel chromatography using 0.5% pyridine and 0-2% methanol in dichloromethane as eluant. Fractions containing pure products were combined and concentrated on rotavap. Residue was coevaporated with anhydrous acetonitrile (3x) and dried *in vacuo*.

General method for phosphitylation of protected LNA nucleosides. Base protected dimethoxytrityl-LNA nucleoside was coevaporated with anhydrous dichloromethane (2x) and was taken in anhydrous dichloromethane (10 ml/g of nucleoside for A,G &T and ~30 ml/g for C). To this bis(diisopropylamino)(2-cyanoethyl)phosphite (1.05-1.10 equivalent), followed by tetrazole (0.95 equivalent) were added. Mixture was stirred at room temperature and reaction was followed by HPLC (70% acetonitrile in 0.1M TEAA, pH 7, 2 min., 70-100% acetonitrile in 8 min., and 100% acetonitrile in 5 min., flow rate: 1 ml/min., Novapak C-18 column). Once the reaction had proceeded to >90% and no more increase in amidite formation was observed upon further stirring, the mixture was cooled in ice. It was diluted with dichloromethane (~15-20 times the original volume) and washed with cold saturated sodium bicarbonate (2x) followed by cold brine (1x). Organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated on rotavap. Residue was coevaporated with anhydrous acetonitrile (3x) and dried *in vacuo* overnight. HPLC purity ranged from 93-98%.

Preparation of LNA nucleoside 5'-triphosphates

Example 123

Synthesis of LNA nucleoside 5'-triphosphates. (*Tetrahedron Letters* **1988**, *29* 4525). In a 13x100 mm polypropylene tube, nucleosides **37**, **44**, **51**, 4-N-benzoylated **57A** or **61B** (93.8 μmol) was suspended in 1 mL pyridine (dried by CaH_2). The solution was evaporated in a speedvac, under high vacuum, to dryness. The residue was twice resuspended in acetonitrile (dried by CaH_2) and evaporated to dryness. The nucleoside was suspended in 313 μL trimethyl phosphate (dried by 4Å molecular sieves), to which 30.1 mg Proton Sponge™ (1.5 equivalents) were added. The mixture was sealed, vortexed, and cooled to 0° C. $POCl_3$ (9.8 μL, 1.1 equivalent) was added with vortexing. The reaction was allowed to proceed at 0°C for 2.5 hours. During this interval, 469 μmols sodium pyrophosphate (5 equivalents) were dissolved in 5 mL water and passed through 5 mL Dow 50 H^+ ion exchange resin. When the effluent turned acidic, it was collected in 220μL tributylamine and evaporated to a syrup. The TBA pyrophosphate was coevaporated three times with dry acetonitrile. Finally, the dried pyrophosphate was dissolved in 1.3 mL DMF (4Å sieves). After 2.5 hours reaction time, the TBA pyrophosphate and 130 μL tributylamine were added to the nucleoside solution with vigorous vortexing. After 1 minute, the reaction was

quenched by adding 3 mL 0.1 M triethylammonium acetate, pH 7.5. Assay by Mono Q chromatography showed 49% nucleoside 5'-triphosphate. The reaction mixture was diluted to 100 mL with water and adsorbed onto a Q Sepharose ion exchange column, washed with water, and eluted with a linear gradient of 0 to 700 mM NaCl in 5 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.5. Fractions containing triphosphate were assayed by Mono Q ion exchange chromatography. Fractions containing triphosphate were pooled and concentrated to the point of NaCl saturation. The product was desalted on a C_{18} cartridge. The triphospate was quantitated by UV spectroscopy and adjusted to 10 mM solution. Yields were 17 - 44%. LNA nucleosides prepared by this method were, U, T, A, G, and C.

Preparation of LNA modified oligonucleotides

Example 124

Synthesis of oligonucleotides containing LNAs of formula V, X, Y and Z^T, Z^U, Z^G, Z^C, Z^A, Z^{MeC}. The bicyclic nucleoside 3'-*O*-phosphoramidite analogues **8, 19, 30, 39, 46, 53, 57D, 61D,** and **66** as well as commercial 3'-*O*-phosphoramidites were used to synthesise example LNA oligonucleotides of the invention (0.2 to 5 µmol scale) containing one or more of the LNAs of types V, X, Y and Z^T, Z^U, Z^G, Z^C, Z^A, and Z^{MeC}. The purity and composition of the synthesised LNA oligonucleotides was verified by capillary gel electrophoresis, and/or HPLC and/or MALDI-MS. In general, satisfactory coupling efficiencies were obtained for all the monomers. The best coupling efficiencies (~95-100%) were obtained for LNAs **39, 46, 53, 57D, 61D,** and **66** (leading to LNA monomers of formula Z) giving very satisfactory results when synthesising fully modified LNA oligonucleotides or when incorporating LNAs in otherwise unmodified DNA or RNA stands or LNAs into an all-phosphorothioate oligonucleotide. LNA oligonucleotides were dissolved in pure water and the concentration determined as OD_{260}. Solubilities in all cases were excellent. For plain DNA/RNA synthesis and partially modified LNA oligomers, a standard CPG support or a polystyrene support, was used. For the synthesis of fully modified LNA oligomers (e.g. 5'-d(**GTGATATGC**)-3'), a BioGenex Universial CPG Support (BioGenex, U.S.A.) was used, or LNA derivatised supports were used.)

Example 125

Synthesis of phosphorothioate LNA oligonucleotides. The all-phosphorothioate LNA (Table 7) was synthesised on an automated DNA synthesiser using similar conditions as those described earlier (Example 124). Beaucages' reagent was used as sulphurising agent. The stepwise coupling yields were >98%. After completion of the syntheses, deprotection and cleavage from the solid support was effected using concentrated ammonia (55 °C, 14 h).

Example 126

Synthesis of 2'-Thio-LNA oligonucleotides. The 2'-thio-LNA oligonucleotides (containing monomer U^S (formula Z (thio-variant) of Figure 2), Figure 37, Table 8) were synthesised on an automated DNA synthesiser using standard conditions (Example 124). The step-wise coupling yield for amidite **76F** was approximately 85% (12 min couplings; improved purity of amidite **76F** is expected to result in increased coupling yield). After completion of the syntheses, deprotection and cleavage from the solid support was effected using concentrated ammonia (55 °C, 8 h).

Example 127

Synthesis of 2'-Amino-LNA oligonucleotides. By procedures similar to those described in Example 126, 2'-Amino-LNA oligonucleotides (containing monomer T^{NH} and monomer T^{NMe} (formula Z (amino variants) of Figure 2), Figures 35 and 36) was efficiently obtained on an automated DNA synthesiser using amidites **74A** and **74F** (≥98% stepwise coupling yields).

Example 128

Fluorescein-labeling of LNA oligomers. LNA oligomers (formula Z of Figure 2) AL16 (5´-d(**TGTGTGAAATTGTTA**T)-3´; LNA nucleotides in bold) and AL17 (5´-d(**ATAAAGTGTAAA**G)-3´; LNA nucleotides in bold) were succesfully labeled with fluorescein using the FluoroAmp T4 Kinase Green Oligonucleotide Labeling System as described by the manufacturer (Promega). Briefly, 16 nmol of either LNA-oligomer AL16 or AL17 was 5'-thiophosphate labelled in a 50 µl reaction buffer containing T4 kinase and γ-S-ATP. The reactions were incubated for 2 h at 37° C. The thio-phosphorylated LNA oligos were precipitated by the addition of 5µl of oligonucleotide precipitant (Promega) and 165 µl of ice cold (-20°C) 95 % ethanol. After

centrifugation the pellets were washed once with 500 µl of ice cold (-20°C) 70% ethanol and redissolved in 25 µl of PBSE buffer. Freshly prepared 5-maleimide-fluorescein solution (50 µg in 5 µl DMSO) were added to the thiophosphorylated LNA oligos and the reaction mixtures incubated at 68° C for 30 min. Additional 5-maleimide-fluorescein (50 µg in 5 µl DMSO) were added to each LNA oligo and the reaction mixtures incubated for an additional 60 min. After incubation 10 µl of oligonucleotide precipitant was added to each reaction mixture followed by 180 µl ice-cold (-20° C) and 100µl N,N-dimethylformamide. The fluorescein labeled LNA oligos were isolated by centrifugation followed by aspiration of the supernatant. The fluorescein labelled LNA-oligomers were purified by reversed-phase HPLC as follows: column Delta-Pack C-18, 300A, 0.4 x 30 cm; eluent 0-50 % acetonitrile in 0.04 M triethylammonium buffer (pH 7.0); flow rate 1.5 ml/min. The fractions containing LNA-oligos were pooled and evaporated under reduced pressure (oil pump and speed-vac system) during 12 h.

Hybridisation data

Example 129

Thermostability of oligonucleotides containing monomers of formula V, X, Y and Z^T, Z^U, Z^G, Z^C, Z^A, Z^{MeC}. The thermostability of the LNA modified oligonucleotides were determined spectrophotometrically using a spectrophotometer equipped with a thermoregulated Peltier element. Hybridisation mixtures of 1 ml were prepared containing either of 3 different buffers (10mM Na_2HPO_4, pH 7.0, 100mM NaCl, 0.1mM EDTA; 10mM Na_2HPO_4 pH 7.0, 0.1mM EDTA; 3M tetrametylammoniumchlorid (TMAC), 10mM Na_2HPO_4, pH 7.0, 0.1mM EDTA) and equimolar (1 µM or 1.5 µM) amounts of the different LNA modified oligonucleotides and their complementary or mismatched DNA or RNA oligonucleotides. Identical hybridisation mixtures using the unmodified oligonucleotides were prepared as references. The T_m's were obtained as the first derivative of the melting curves. Tables 1-4 summarise the results (LNAs are marked with bold). Figure 2 illustrates the monomeric LNAs used. The nomenclature **V, X, Y and Z^T, Z^U, Z^G, Z^C, Z^A, Z^{MeC}** refer to structures V, X, Y and Z of Figure 2. In the tables, the nucleobases of the LNA monomers are indicated. Furthermore, for the thio and amino variants of the LNA structure Z of the last two tables, the nomenclature used is, e.g., Z^{TS} and Z^{TNH}, respectively.

LNAs containing structure Z were particularly thoroughly examined (see Table 1). When three Z^T residues were incorporated into an oligonucleotide of mixed sequence the T_m´s obtained in NaCl buffer with both complementary DNA (10) and RNA (16) oligonucleotides were substantially higher (RNA: roughly 7 °C and DNA: roughly 5 °C per modification) than the T_m of the corresponding duplexes with unmodified oligonucleotides (1 and 8). Similar results were obtained with LNAs containing two Z^T residues and either one Z^G (21 and 24B) or Z^U (25), Z^C (69), Z^{MeC} (65), and Z^A (58) residues. When mismatches were introduced into the target RNA or DNA oligonucleotides the T_m of the LNA modified oligonucleotides in all cases dropped significantly (11-15A and 17; 18-20 and 22-24A; 26-31; 57 and 59-60; 63-64 and 66, and 67), unambiguously demonstrating that the LNA modified oligonucleotides hybridise to their target sequences obeying the Watson-Crick hydrogen bonding rules. In all cases the drop in T_m of the LNA modified oligonucleotides upon introduction of mismatches was equal to or greater than that of the corresponding unmodified oligonucleotides (2-7 and 9; 33-38), showing that the LNA modified oligonucleotide are at least as specific as their natural counterparts. A lowering of the ionic strength of the hybridisation buffer (from 10mM Na_2HPO_4, pH 7.0, 100mM NaCl, 0.1mM EDTA to 10mM Na_2HPO_4 pH 7.0, 0.1mM EDTA) lowers the T_m of the LNA modified oligonucleotides for their complementary DNA oligos (40,41) or RNA oligonucleotides (40A, 41A). A similar effect is observed with the unmodified oligonucleotides and its complementary DNA oligo (39) or RNA oligo (39A).

Addition of 3M tetrametylammoniumchlorid (TMAC) to the hybridisation buffer significantly increases the T_m of the LNA modified oligonucleotide for their complementary DNA oligos (10,21,25). Moreover, TMAC levels out the diffeneces in the T_m's of the different oligonucleotides which is observed in the NaCl buffer (lowest T_m in the NaCl buffer 44°C and highest 49°C as opposed to 56°C and 57°C in TMAC). Introduction of mismatches substantially decreases the T_m of the LNA modified oligonucleotides for their DNA targets (11-13, 18-20, and 26-28). A similar picture emerges with the unmodified reference oligonucleotides (1-4 and 32-35)

The data with the low salt buffer shows that LNA modified oligonucleotides exhibit a sensitivity to the ionic strength of the hybridisation buffer similar to normal

oligonucleotides. From the T_m data with the TMAC buffer we infer that TMAC exhibits a T_m equalising effect on LNA modified oligonucleotides similar to the effect observed with normal DNA oligonucleotides. LNA modified oligonucleotides retain their exquisite specificity in both hybridisation buffers.

The fully modified LNA oligonucleotide containing all four monomers (71 and 75), the almost fully modified LNA oligonucleotide (except for a 3´-terminal DNA nucleoside) containing both Z^G and Z^T (41 and 41A) and the partly modified oligonucleotide containing a central block of Z^T and Z^G (40 and 40A) also exhibit substantially increased affinity compared to the unmodified control oligonucleotide (39 and 39A; 1 and 8). This shows that LNAs of formula Z are very useful in the production of both fully and partly modified oligomers. We note that the almost fully modified oligomer (41 and 41A) exhibits an unprecedented high affinity for both complementory RNA (>93°C) and DNA (83°C). A similar extreme affinity (for both RNA and DNA) was observed with the almost fully modified LNA oligomer containing exclusively Z^T (Table 1: 52 and 53) and the fully modified LNA oligomer (71 and 75). The affinity of the partly modified poly-T oligonucleotide depended on the positions and the number of Z^T monomers incorporated (44-51). Whereas the T_m´s with RNA targets (45, 47, 49 and 51) in all cases were higher than the corresponding unmodified oligonucleotides (43) one gave a lower T_m with the DNA target (46). Since mixed sequence oligonucleotide containing 3 Z^T residues exhibited a substantially increased affinity for their DNA (10) and RNA target (16) compared to the unmodified reference oligonucleotides (1 and 8) this suggests that other binding motifs than Watson-Crick (such as for example the Hoogsteen binding motif) are open to poly-T oligonucleotides and that these binding motifs are somewhat sensitive to the precise architecture of the modified oligonucleotide. In all cases introduction of single base mismatches into the complex between the fully Z^T modified poly-T oligonucleotide and a DNA target (54-56) resulted in a significant drop in T_m.

Oligonucleotides containing either LNAs of structures V (Table 2), X (Table 3) and Y (Table 4) were analysed in the context of fully and partly modified poly-T sequences. The fully modified oligonucleotides of structure V and Y exhibited an increase in T_m (albeit much lower than the Z^T modified oligonucleotides) with both RNA (Table 2, 14 and Table 4, 14) and DNA targets (Table 2, 13, and Table 4, 13) compared to the

unmodifed oligonucleotides (Table 1, 42 and 43). The partly modified oligonucleotides containing monomers of structure V and Y behaved similarly to partly modified oligonucleotides containing Z^T and probably this is due to the homopolymer nature of the sequence as outlined above. Oligonucleotides containing X^T in all cases exhibited a much reduced T_m compared to the reference DNA oligonucleotides.

Example 130

A fully modified LNA oligonucleotide form stable hybrids with complementary DNA in both the anti-parallel and the parallel orientation. A full modified LNA oligonucleotide was hybridised to its complementary DNA in both the anti-parallel and the parallel orientation. Hybridisation solutions (1 mL) contained 10 mM Na_2HPO_4 (pH 7), 100 mM NaCl and 0.1 mM EDTA and 1 μM of each of the two olignucleotides. As shown in Table 1 both the anti-parallel (71) and the parallel binding orientation (77) produces stable duplexes. The anti-parallel is clearly the most stable of the two. However, even the parallel duplex is significantly more stable than the corresponding anti-parallel duplex of the unmodified DNA oligonucleotides (Table 1, 1).

Example 131

LNA monomers can be used to increase the affinity of RNA oligomers for their complementary nucleic acids. The thermostability of complexes between a 9-mer RNA oligonucleotide containing 3 LNA-T monomers (Z^T) and the complementary DNA or RNA oligonucleotides were measured spectrophotometrically. Hybridisation solutions (1 ml) containing 10mM Na_2HPO_4, pH 7.0, 100mM NaCl, 0.1mM EDTA and 1μM of each of the two oligonucleotides. Identical hybridisation mixtures using the unmodified RNA oligonucleotides were measured as references. As shown in Table 5 the LNA modified RNA oligonucleotide hybridises to both its complementary DNA (1) and RNA (3) oligonucleotide. As previously observed for LNA modified DNA oligonucleotides, the binding affinity of the LNA modified RNA oligonucleotide is strongest to the RNA complement (3). In both cases the affinity of the LNA modified RNA oligonucleotide is substantially higher than that of the unmodified controls (2 and 4). Table 5 also shows that the specificity towards both DNA and RNA targets are retained in LNA modified RNA oligonucleotides.

Example 132

LNA-LNA base pairing. RNA or DNA oligonucleotides containing three Z^T LNA monomers or an oligonucleotide composed entirely of LNA Z monomers were hybridised to complementary unmodified DNA oligonucleotides or DNA oligonucleotides containing three Z^A LNA monomers and the T_m of the hybrids were measured spectrophotometrically. Hybridisation solutions (1 ml) contained 10mM Na_2HPO_4, pH 7.0, 100mM NaCl and 0.1mM EDTA and 1 μM of each of the two oligonucleotides. As shown in Table 6 all the LNA modified oligonucleotides hybridises to the complementary, unmodified DNA oligonucleotides (2 and 3) as well as the complementary LNA modified oligonucleotides (4, 5 and 6). As observed previously the presence of LNA monomers in one strand of a hybrid (2 and 3) increases the T_M significantly compared to the unmodified control hybrid (1). The presence of LNA-LNA base pairs in the hybrid increases the T_M even further (4 and 5) Moreover, a highly stable hybrid can be formed between a fully modified LNA oligonucleotide and a partly LNA-Z^A modified DNA oligonucleotide (6). This constitutes the first example of LNA-LNA base pairs in a hybrid.

Example 133

An LNA all-phosphoromonothioate oligonucleotide display relatively less decreased thermostability towards complementary DNA and RNA than the corresponsing all-phosphorothioate DNA oligonucleotide. The thermostability of an all-phosphoromonothioate DNA oligonucleotide containing three Z^T LNA monomers (LNA oligonucleotide) and the corresponding all-phosphoromonothioate reference DNA oligonucleotide towards complementary DNA and RNA was evaluated under the same conditions as described in Example 132, however without EDTA (Table 7). It was observed that the LNA all-phosphoromonothioate oligonucleotide containing three LNA Z^T monomers displayed only weakly decreased thermostability (Table 7, 3 and 4) when compared to the corresponding reference LNA oligonucleotide (Table 1, 10 and 16). The corresponding all-phosphoromonothioate DNA oligonucleotide (Table 7, 1 and 2) displayed significantly decreased thermostability when compared to the corresponding reference DNA oligonucleotide (Table 1, 1 and 8). This has important possible implications on the use of all- or partially phosphoromonothioate LNA oligonucleotides in antisense and other therapeutic applications. Thus, the compatibility of LNA monomers and unmodified monomers in an phosphoromono-

thioate oligonucleotide has been demonstrated. It can be anticipated that such constructs will display both Rnase H activity and nuclease resistance in addition to the LNA enhanced hybridisation characteristics.

Example 134

2'-Thio-LNA display nucleic acid recognition properties comparable with those of LNA (Monomer Z). The hybridisation conditions were as described in Example 132, however without EDTA. The results for the 2'-thio-LNAs (Table 8) clearly indicate a positive effect on the thermal stability of duplexes towards both DNA and RNA by the introduction of 2'-thio-LNA monomer U^S (The monomers correspond to formula Z of Figure 2 where the methyleneoxy bridge has been substituted with a methylenethio bridge). This effect ($\Delta T_m \sim +5$ °C / modification towards DNA; $\Delta T_m \sim +8$ °C / modification towards RNA) is comparable with that observed for parent LNA. The picture is complicated by the simultaneous introduction of two modifications (the 2'-thio functionality and uracil instead of thymine). However, as we have earlier observed identical melting temperatures for the LNA thymine and uracil monomers, and as the references containing 2'-deoxyuridine instead of thymidine, if anything, would be expected to display lower T_m values, the comparison is relevant.

Example 135

2'-Amino-LNA (Monomer Z^{TNH}) and 2'-Methylamino-LNA (Monomer Z^{TNMe}) display nucleic acid recognition properties comparable with those of parent LNA (Monomer Z). The hybridisation conditions were as described in Example 132, however without EDTA. The melting results for the 2'-amino-LNAs (Table 9) clearly indicate a positive effect on the thermal stability of duplexes towards DNA and RNA by introduction of either 2'-amino-LNA monomers T^{NH} or T^{NMe} (The monomers correspond to formula Z of Figure 2 where the methyleneoxy bridge has been substituted with a methyleneamino bridge or methylene-(N-methyl)amino bridge, respectively). This effect ($\Delta T_m \sim +3$ °C / modification towards DNA and $\Delta T_m \sim +6$ to $+8$ °C / modification towards RNA) is comparable to that of parent LNA. It is notheworthy, that the increased thermal affinity is also observed with an oligo composed of a mixture of 2'-alkylamino-LNA monomers and nonalkylated 2'-amino-LNA monomers.

LNA and LNA modified oligonucleotides as a substrates for enzymes

Example 136

3'-Exonucleolytic stability of oligomers 5'-V^T_{13}T and 5'-Z^T_{13}T. A solution of oligonucleotides (0.2 OD) in 2 ml of the following buffer (0.1 M Tris-HCl, pH 8.6, 0.1 M NaCl, 14 mM $MgCl_2$) was digested at 25°C with 1.2 U SVPDE (snake venom phosphodiesterase). During digestion, the increase in absorbance at 260 nm was followed. Whereas the unmodified control T_{14} was fully degraded after 10 min of degradation, 5-Z^T_{13}T and 5'-V^T_{13}T remained intact for 60 min.

Example 137

LNA modified oligos as substrates for T4 polynucleotide kinase. 20 pmoles of each primer (FP2: 5´- GGTGGTTTGTTTG-3´; DNA probe), (AL2: 5´-GGTGG**TTTG**TTTG-3´, LNA nucleosides in bold) and (AL3: 5´-**GGTGGTTTGTTT**G-3´, LNA nucleosides in bold) was mixed with T4 polynucleotide Kinase (5 Units; New England Biolabs) and 6 μl γ-^{32P}ATP (3000 Ci/mmol, Amersham) in a buffer containing 70 mM Tris-HCl (pH 7.6), 10 mM $MgCl_2$, 5 mM dithiotretiol (final volume 20 μl). The samples were incubated 40 min at 37°C and afterwards heated to 65°C for 5 min. To each of the reactions were added 2 µl of tRNA (1μg/µl), 29 µl of a 3M ammonium acetate and 100 µl of ethanol. The reactions were incubated at -20°C for 30 min. and the labelled oligos were precipitated by centrifugation at 15000g for 30 min. The pellet was resuspended in 20 μl H_2O. The samples (1 μl) were mixed with a loading buffer (formamide (pH 8.0), 0.1 % xylene cyanol FF, 0.1 % bromophenol blue and 10 mM EDTA) and electrophoresed on a denaturing polyacrylamide gel (16 % acrylamide/-bisacrylamide solution, 7 M urea, 1 X TBE and 0.1 mM EDTA) in a TBE running buffer (90 mM Tris-HCl (pH 8.3), 90 mM boric acid and 2.5 mM disodium EDTA-2 H_2O). The gel was dried on a gel dryer (BioRad model 583) and autoradiographed to a X-ray film (CL-XPosure film, Pierce 34075) for 20 min. The result is shown in Figure 6 (FP2: lane 1 and 2; AL2: lane 3 and 4; AL3: lane 5 and 6). Three conclusions can be drawn on the basis of this experiment. Firstly, it can be concluded that partly and fully LNA modified oligos are excellent mimics of natural nucleic acid in their ability to act as substrate for a nucleic acid specific enzyme like polynucleotide kinase. Secondly, it can be concluded that LNA modified oligos can be efficiently precipitated by procedures normally employed to precipitate standard nucleic acids. In fact, the

relative signal intencities of the unmodified (lane 1,2), partly (lane 3,4) and fully modified oligos (lane 5,6) in the autoradiogram suggests that the more LNA nucleosides a standard DNA oligo contains the more efficiently it can be precipitated by salt/alcohol procedures. Thirdly, the similar positions of the signal in the autoradiogram of the unmodified, partly and fully modified oligos shows that incorporation of LNA nucleosides into a DNA oligo does not alter its electrophoretic mobility in polyacrylamide gels.

Example 138

3'-End labelling of LNA-containing oligonucleotides with terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase. Oligonucleotides containing LNA monomers were 3'end-labelled using the enzyme terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase. The sequence and extent of LNA modification were as follows (where LNA monomers are in bold):

Control	5' GGT GGT TTG TTT G 3'
(1)	5' GGT GGT TTG TTT G 3'
(2)	5' GGT GGT **TTG** TTT G 3'
(3)	5' **GGT GGT TTG TTT** G 3'

Oligonucleotide (50 pmol) was incubated with 250 µCi [α-^{32}P]ddATP (3000 Ci/mmol) and 100 Units terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase in 250 µl 100mM cacodylate buffer pH 7.2, 2mM $CoCl_2$ and 0.2mM 2-mercaptoethanol at 37°C for 2 hours. The reaction was then stopped by adding formamide loading buffer and heating to 100°C for 5 min before placing on ice. Samples (0.2 pmol) were run on a 19% acrylamide gel containing 7M urea and the percentage incorporation of radioactivity into the oligonucleotide bands was quantified by means of a phosphorimager (Molecular Dynamics). The results show incorporation of radioactivity in all cases, including the oligonucleotide with a high LNA content: Control 94.9%, (1) 39.7%, (2) 83.7%, (3) 31.7%. We conclude that LNA modified oligos are substrates for the TdT enzyme.

Example 139

The ability of terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT) to tail LNA modified oligonucleotides depends on the design of the oligomer. The following 15mer primers and a mixture of 8 to 32 base oligonucleotide markers were 5' end labelled with [γ ^{33}P] ATP and T4 polynucleotide kinase (where LNA monomers are in bold):

P1 5'-TGC ATG TGC TGG AGA-3'

P2 5'- GC ATG TGC TGG AGA T-3'

PZ1 5'-TGC ATG TGC TGG AGA-3'

PZ2 5'- GC ATG TGC TGG AGA T-3'

Reactions were boiled for 5 min after labelling to remove any PNK activity. Four picomoles of each labelled primer, 25 U terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase and 16 µM dATP were incubated in 25 µl 100 mM cacodylate buffer pH 7.2, 2 mM $CoCl_2$ and 0.2 mM 2-mercaptoethanol for 90 min at 37°C. The reactions were stopped by the addition of formamide stop solution and the reaction products run on a 19% polyacrylamide 7 M urea gel with the labelled markers. Autoradiography using Biomax film was carried out on the dry gel. As shown in Figure 22, P1 (lane 2), P2 (lane 4) and PZ1 (lane 3) all gave a tail estimated at greater than 70 bases long on the basis of the 8-32 base marker (lanes 1 and 6). Primer PZ2 (lane 5) was not extended under these reaction conditions. We conclude that the TdT enzyme will tolerate LNA monomers within the oligonucleotide, but not at the extreme 3' end.

Example 140

LNA-thymidine-5'-triphosphate (LNA-TTP) as a substrate for terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT). In order to test the ability of the triphosphate of LNA-TTP (Example 123) to be accepted by terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase as a substrate, an oligonucleotide tailing reaction was performed. A 15mer primer (sequence: 5'-TGC ATG TGC TGG AGA-3') and a mixture of 8 to 32 base oligonucleotide markers were 5' end labelled with [γ ^{33}P] ATP and T4 polynucleotide kinase. Reactions were boiled for 5 min after labelling to remove any PNK activity. Four picomoles of the labelled primer, 25 U terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase and 32, 64 or 128 µM dTTP or LNA-TTP were incubated in 25 µl 100 mM cacodylate buffer pH 7.2, 2 mM $CoCl_2$ and 0.2 mM 2-mercaptoethanol for 90 min at 37°C. The reactions were stopped by the addition of formamide stop solution and the reaction products run on a 19% polyacrylamide 7M urea gel with the labelled markers. Autoradiography using Biomax film was carried out on the dry gel. As shown in Figure 10, reactions with either 32 µM dTTP (lane B), 64 µM dTTP (lane C) or 128 µM dTTP (lane D) all produced tailed oligonucleotides which on the basis on the 8-32 oligonucleotide marker (outermost left and rigth lanes) were estimated at greater than 100 nucleotides. The LNA-TTP reactions (32 µM dTTP (lane E), 64 µM dTTP (lane F) or 128 µM dTTP (lane G)) all

resulted in the primer being extended by one base and ~50% of this being extended by a further base. This result is very similar to that obtained with ribonucleotides and TdT. We conclude that LNA derived triphosphates can be recognised and incorporated into a DNA oligonucleotide by the TdT enzyme. This latter finding that LNA-TTP can bind to the polymerase underscores the possibility of successfully using LNA-monomer derivatives as nucleoside drugs.

Example 141

Exonuclease free Klenow fragment DNA polymerase I can incorporate LNA Adenosine, Cytosine, Guanosine and Uridine-5'-triphosphates (LNA ATP, LNA CTP, LNA GTP, LNA UTP) into a DNA strand. A primer extension assay was used to evaluate the LNA NTP's (see Example 123), ribonucleotides, as substrates for exonuclease free Klenow fragment DNA polymerase I (EFK). The assay used a ^{33}P 5' end labelled 15mer primer hybridised to one of four different 24mer templates. The sequences of the primer and templates are (LNA monomer in bold):

Primer 5' TGCATGTGCTGGAGA 3'

Template 1 3' **ACGTACACGACCTCT**ACCTTGCTA 5'

Template 2 3' **ACGTACACGACCTCT**CTTGATCAG 5'

Template 3 3' **ACGTACACGACCTCTT**GGCTAGTC 5'

Template 4 3' **ACGTACACGACCTCT**GAACTAGTC 5'

One picomole ^{33}P labelled primer was hybridised to 2 picomoles of template in x2 Klenow buffer. To this was added either 4 µM dNTPαS or 500 µM LNA NTP or a mixture of 4 µM dNTPαS and 500 µM LNA NTP. Two units of EFK DNA polymerase was added to each reaction. 2mU inorganic pyrophosphatase was added to each of the reactions. Primer plus template plus enzyme controls were also carried out. All reactions were carried out in a total volume of 20 µl. The reactions were incubated at 37°C for 3 min. Reactions were then stopped by the addition of 10 µl formamide EDTA stop solution. Reaction products were separated on a 19% polyacrylamide 7M urea gel and the product fragments sized by comparison with a ^{33}P labelled 8 to 32 base oligonucleotide ladder after exposure to Kodak Biomax autoradiography film.

Figure 20 shows the result with LNA-UTP using template 1. The tracks (1-12) correspond to the following reactions: Incorporation of LNA UTP by EFK. Lane 1 - Primer, template and enzyme. Lane 2 - plus dTTPαS. Lane 3 - plus LNA UTP. Lane 4 -

plus dTTPαS and dGTPαS. Lane 5 - plus LNA UTP and dGTPαS. Lane 6 - plus dATPαS, dGTPαS and dTTPαS. Lane 7 - plus LNA UTP, dCTPαS, dGTPαS and dTTPαS. Lane 8 - plus dGTPαS. Lane 9 - plus dCTPαS, dGTPαS and dTTPαS. Lane 10 - plus LNA UTP, dATPαS, dCTPαS and dGTPαS. Lane 11 - plus dATPαS, dCTPαS and dGTPαS. Lane 12 - all 4 dNTPαS. The lanes either side show the 8 - 32 base oligonucleotide markers used for sizing the products.

As is evident from Figure 20, LNA UTP is specifically incorporated as a "T". Further extension from an LNA UTP terminated 3' end with dNTPαS is very slow.

Figure 21 shows the result with LNA-ATP, LNA CTP, and LNA GTP using template 2-4. The tracks (1-21) correspond to the following reactions: Lanes 1, 7, 13 and 17 - primer, template and enzyme. Lane 2 - plus dGTPαS. Lane 3 - plus dATPαS and dGTPαS. Lane 4 - plus LNA GTP. Lane 5 - plus dGTPαS and LNA ATP. Lane 6 - plus LNA ATP and LNA GTP. Lane 8 - plus dATPαS. Lane 9 - plus dATPαS and dCTPαS. Lane 10 - plus LNA ATP. Lane 11 - plus dCTPαS and LNA ATP. Lane 12 - plus dATPαS and LNA CTP. Lane 14 - plus dTTPαS. Lane 15 - plus dGTPαS and dTTPαS. Lane 16 - plus dTTPαS and LNA GTP. Lane 18 - plus dCTPαS. Lane 19 - plus dCTPαS and dTTPαS. Lane 20 - plus LNA CTP. Lane 21 - dTTPαS and LNA CTP. The lanes either side show the 8 - 32 base oligonucleotide markers used for sizing the products.

The experiments using template 2 (track 1-6), show that LNA GTP is able to produce the +1 product with efficient extension of the primer (track 4). The addition of dGTPαS and LNA ATP results in mainly the +2 product (track 5). This is from the incorporation of dGTPαS to give the +1 product followed by extension with LNA ATP. There is evidence of a small amount of +3 product from the consecutive incorporation of LNA ATP. The experiments using Template 3 (tracks 7-12) show that LNA ATP is efficiently incorporated to give the +1 product (track 10). Extension of this product with dCTPαS is slow (track 11). The addition of dATPαS and LNA CTP results in the +2 and +3 products (track 12). The absence of any significant +1 product shows that the addition of the first LNA CTP is efficient, but that the addition of the second LNA CTP is slow. The results from experiments on Templates 1 (tracks 13-16) and 4 (tracks 17-21) show similar trends to those on the other templates. LNA

CTP is efficiently incorporated to give the +1 product on Template 4 (track 20). Extension of this product by dTTPαS is again slow (track 21). The addition of LNA GTP and dTTPαS to reactions on Template 1 results in the +2 product (track 16). Again this shows that the addition of a single LNA triphosphate is quite efficient, but that the addition of consecutive LNA triphosphates is slow.

Example 142

LNA monomers can be used to enhance the resistance of an oligonucleotide to digestion by exonuclease III. In order to test the resistance of the LNA containing oligonucleotides to Exonuclease III degradation the following reaction was performed. The following 15mer primers and 8 to 32 base oligonucleotide markers were 5' end labelled with [γ ^{33}P] ATP and T4 polynucleotide kinase (LNA monomer in bold):

P2 5'- GC ATG TGC TGG AGA T-3'

PZ2 5'- GC ATG TGC TGG AGA **T**-3'

Reactions were boiled for 5 min after labelling to remove any PNK activity. 8 picomoles of each primer was hybridised to 25 pmoles Template (sequence: 3'- ACG TAC ACG ACC TCT ACC TTG CTA-5') in x2 Klenow buffer. 10 Units of Exonuclease III was added to each of the reactions. Controls were also set up which had 1µl water added in place of the enzyme. The reactions were incubated at 37°C for 5 min. The reactions were stopped by the addition of 10µl formamide/EDTA stop solution. The reactions were heated at 95°C for 3 min before loading onto a 19% polyacrylamide 7M urea gel. The gel was fixed in 10% acetic acid/10% methanol before transferring to 3MM paper and drying. The dried gel was exposed to a phosphor screen for 3 hours. The phosphor screen was analysed on the Molecular Dynamics Storm 860 instrument using ImageQuant software. The phosphor screen analysis showed that in the absence of the enzyme the P2 full length band was 99% of the signal and PZ2 full length band was 96% of the signal. In the presence of the enzyme only 20% of the P2 full length product was left after the 5 minute incubation. However, 62% of the full length PZ2 product remained after the same treatment. This shows that a single LNA monomer at the 3' end of an oligonucleotide can enhance the resistance to degradation by exonuclease III.

PCR applications

Example 143

LNA monomers can be used to significantly increase the performance of biotinylated-DNA oligos in the sequence specific capture of PCR amplicons in a MTP format. Two DIG labelled amplicons from pUC19 were generated by PCR amplification as follows:

PCR reaction mixture for Amplicon 1

1 µl pUC19 (1 ng/µl),
1 µl reverse primer (5´-AACAGCTATGACCATG-3´) (20 µM),
1 µl forward primer (5´- GTAAAACGACGGCCAGT-3´) (20 µM),
10 µl dUTP-mix (2 mM dATP, 2 mM dCTP, 2 mM dGTP and 6mM dUTP),
1.5 µl DIG-11-dUTP (1 mM)
10 µl 10x Taq buffer (Boehringer Mannheim incl $MgCl_2$)
1 µl Taq polymerase (Boehringer Mannheim) 5 U/µl
H_2O ad 100 µl

PCR reaction mixture for Amplicon 2

1 µl pUC19 (1 ng/µl),
0.4 µl primer 3 (5´-GATAGGTGCCTCACTGAT-3´) (50 µM),
0.4 µl primer 4 (5´-GTCGTTCGCTCCAAGCTG-3´) (50 µM),
10 µl dUTP-mix (2 mM dATP, 2 mM dCTP, 2 mM dGTP and 6mM dUTP),
1.5 µl DIG-11-dUTP (1 mM)
10 µl 10x Taq buffer (Boehringer Mannheim incl $MgCl_2$)
1 µl Taq polymerase (Boehringer Mannheim) 5 U/µl
H_2O ad 100 µl

PCR reaction : (Cycler: Perkin Elmer 9600) 94°C 5 min; add polymerase; 94°C 1 min, 45°C 1min, 70°C 2 min (29 cycles) 72°C 10 min.

10 µl from each PCR reaction was analysed on a standard agarose gel and the expected fragments of approximately 100 bp and 500 bp were observed.

10 µl of DIG-labelled amplicon 1 or amplicon 2 was mixed with 5 pmol of 5' biotinylated capture probe in 1xSSC (0.15 M NaCl, 15mM citrate, pH 7.0) in a total volume of 450 µl. The following capture probes were used: B-DNA1 (biotin-ATGCCTGCAGGTCGAC-3'; DNA probe specific for amplicon 1), B-DNA2 (biotin-GGTGGTTTGTTTG-3'; DNA probe specific for amplicon 2) and B-LNA2 (biotin-**GGTGGTTTGTTT**G-3', LNA nucleosides in bold; LNA probe specific for amplicon 2). Reactions were heated to 95°C for 5 min in order to denature amplicons and allowed to cool at 25°C for 15 min to facilitate hybridisation between the probe and the target amplicon strand. After hybridisation 190 µl of each reaction were transferred to a streptavidin coated micro plate (Pierce, cat. no.15124) and incubated for one hour at 37°C. After washing the plate with phosphate buffered saline (PBST, 0.15 M Na^+, pH 7.2, 0.05% Tween 20, 3x 300µl), 200 µl of peroxidase labelled anti- DIG antibodies were added (Boehringer Mannheim, diluted 1:1000 in PBST). Plates were incubated for 30 min at 37°C and washed (PBST, 3x 300µl). Wells were assayed for peroxidase activity by adding 100 µl of substrate solution (0.1 M citrate-phosphate buffer pH 5.0, 0.66mg/ml ortho-pheylenediamine dihydrochloride, 0.012% H_2O_2). The reaction was stopped after 8 min by adding 100 µl H_2SO_4 (0.5 M) and the absorbance at 492 nm was read in a micro plate reader. As shown in Figure 3, the unmodified bio-DNAs capture probes (B-DNA1 and B-DNA2) both behave as expected, *i.e.* they each capture only their target PCR amplicon. Compared to the B-DNA1 probe the B-DNA2 probe is rather inefficient in capturing its cognate amplicon. The capture efficiency of the B-DNA2 probe, however, can be dramatically improved by substituting 12 of its 13 DNA nucleosides by the corresponding LNA nucleosides. As shown in Figure 3 the use of the B-LNA2 probe in place of the B-DNA2 probe leads to a more that 10 fold increase in the sensitivity of the assay. At the same time the B-LNA2 retains the ability of the un-modified B-DNA2 to efficiently discriminate between the related and non-related amplicon, underscoring the excellent specificity of LNA-oligos. We conclude that 1) biotin covalently attached to an LNA modified oligo retains its ability to bind to streptavidin, 2) that LNA modified oligos works efficiently in a MTP based amplicon capture assay and that 3) LNA offers a means to dramatically improve the performance of standard DNA oligos in the affinity capture of PCR amplicons.

Example 144

An LNA substituted oligo is able to capture its cognate PCR amplicon by strand invasion. Two identical sets of 10µl reactions of amplicon1 or 2 (prepared as in Example 143) were mixed with either 1, 5 or 25pmol of the B-LNA2 capture probe (biotin-**GGTGGTTTGTTTG**-3´, LNA nucleosides in bold; probe specific for amplicon 2) in 1 x SSC (0.15 M NaCl, 15mM citrate, pH 7.0) in a total volume of 450 µl. One set of reactions were heated to 95°C for 5 min in order to denature amplicons and allowed to cool to 25°C to facilitate hybridisation between the probe and the target amplicon strand. The other set of reactions were left without denaturation. From each of the reactions 190 µl were transferred to a streptavidin coated micro plate (Pierce, cat. no.15124) and incubated for one hour at 37°C. After washing the plate with phosphate buffered saline (PBST, 0.15 M Na^+, pH 7.2, 0.05% Tween 20, 3x 300µl), 200 µl of peroxidase labelled anti- DIG antibodies were added (Boehringer Manheim, diluted 1:1000 in PBST). Plates were incubated for 30 min at 37°C and washed (PBST, 3x 300µl). Wells were assayed for peroxidase activity by adding 100 µl of substrate solution (0.1 M citrate-phosphate buffer pH 5.0, 0.66mg/ml ortho-pheylenediamine dihydrochloride, 0.012% H_2O_2). The reaction was stopped after 10 min by adding 100 µl H_2SO_4 (0.5 M) and the absorbance at 492 nm was read in a micro plate reader. When amplicons are denaturated prior to hybridisation with the capture probe (Figure 4A) we observe an efficient and sequence specific amplicon capture similar to that shown in Example 143. Increasing the concentration of the B-LNA2 from 1 to 5pmol leads to an increase in capture efficiency. A further increase to 25pmol of probe results in a decreased signal. This observation is consistent with saturation of the available biotin binding sites on the streptavidin MTP. When amplicons are not denaturated prior to hybridisation with the capture probe (Figure 4B) we also observe an efficient and sequence specific amplicon capture. In fact, the data shows that amplicon capture without denaturation are as effective and specific as amplicon capture with denaturation. This strongly indicates that the Bio-LNA2 probe is capable of binding to its target sequence by strand invasion. To our knowledge, this constitutes the first example ever of sequence specific targeting of dsDNA under physiological salt conditions by a mixed purine/pyrimidine probe. Aside from its potential to significantly simplify a range of basic research and DNA diagnostic procedures this unexpected property of LNA modified oligos can be foreseen to be of

major importance in the development of efficient new drugs by the antisense, and in particular anti-gene approach.

Example 145

An LNA substituted oligo, immobilised on a solid surface function efficiently in the sequence specific capture of a PCR amplicon. Wells of a streptavidin coated micro-titer plate (Boehringer Mannheim) were incubated for 1 hour with either 5 pmol of the B-DNA2 probe (biotin-GGTGGTTTGTTTG-3´; DNA probe specific for amplicon 2) or the B-LNA2 probe (biotin-**GGTGGTTTGTTT**G-3´, LNA nucleosides in bold; LNA probe specific for amplicon 2) in a total volume of 100µl 1xSSC (0.15 M NaCl, 15mM citrate, pH 7.0). In total, four wells were incubated with the B-DNA2 probe, four wells with the B-LNA2 probe and four wells were incubated with buffer alone. After incubation the wells were washed three times with 1xSSC. DIG-labelled amplicon1(60µl) or amplicon2 (60µl) (prepared as in Example 143) were mixed with 540µl of 1 xSSC, heat denaturated at 95°C for 5 min., and transferred (100µl) to the micro plate wells. Two of the wells containing either B-DNA2, B-LNA2 or no capture probe received amplicon1 and two of the wells containing B-DNA2, B-LNA2 or no capture probe received amplicon2. After 1 hour at 37°C the plate was washed 3 times with phosphate buffered saline (PBST, 0.15 M Na^+, pH 7.2, 0.05% Tween 20, 3x 300µl) and 200 µl of peroxidase labelled anti- DIG antibodies were added (Boehringer Mannheim, diluted 1:1000 in PBST). Plates were incubated for 30 min at 37°C and washed 3 times with 300µl PBST. Wells were assayed for peroxidase activity by adding 100 µl of substrate solution (0.1 M citrate-phosphate buffer pH 5.0, 0.66mg/ml ortho-pheylenediamine dihydrochloride, 0.012% H_2O_2). The reaction was stopped after 6 min by adding 100 µl H_2SO_4 (0.5 M) and the absorbance at 492 nm was read in a micro plate reader. As shown in Figure 5, the LNA modified capture probe (B-LNA2) captures its specific amplicon (amplicon2) very efficiently and significantly better (approx. five fold increase in sensitivity) than the corresponding unmodified DNA capture probe (B-DNA2). No signal is obtained when the B-LNA2 probe is incubated with the unrelated amplicon (amplicon1) underscoring the exquisite specificity of the B-LNA2 probe. We conclude that LNA modified oligos function efficiently in the sequence specific capture of PCR amplicons when immobilised on a solid surface. We further conclude that the use of LNA modified oligos in place of standard DNA oligos provide for a better signal to noise ratio. Thus, LNA offers a

means to significantly improve the performance of current DNA based assays that utilises immobilised capture probes, like for instance the array format wherein multiple immobilised probes are used to simultaneously detect the occurrence of several different target sequences in a sample.

Example 146

Fully mixed LNA monomers can be used to significantly increase the performance of immobilised biotinylated-DNA oligos in the sequence specific capture of PCR amplicons in a MTP format. Three DIG labelled amplicons from Nras sequence (ref.: Nucleic Acid Research, **1985**, Vol. 13, No. 14, p 52-55) were generated by PCR amplification as follows:

PCR primers:

Forward primer: 5'-CCAGCTCTCAGTAGTTTAGTACA-3' bases 701-723 according to the NAR reference.

910 bp reverse primer: 5'-GTAGAGCTTTCTGGTATGACACA-3' bases 1612-1590 (reverse sequence according to NAR ref.).

600 bp reverse primer: 5'-TAAGTCACAGACGTATCTCAGAC-3' bases 1331-1308 (reverse sequence according to NAR ref.).

200 bp reverse primer: 5'-CTCTGTTTCAGACATGAACTGCT-3' bases 909-886 (reverse sequence according to NAR ref.).

PCR reaction mixture for Nras amplicons: 2.3 µl human placental genomic DNA (440 ng/µl), 50 µl 10x PCR buffer (without $MgCl_2$ Perkin Elmer), 30 µl 25 mM $MgCl_2$, 50 µl dNTP-mix (2 mM dATP, dCTP, dGTP and 1.8 mM dTTP), 10 µl 1 mM Dig-11-dUTP, 10 µl 25 µM forward primer, 10 µl 25 µM reverse primer , 5 µl 5 U/µl AmpliTaq Gold (Perkin Elmer) and water ad 500 µl. **PCR reaction:** The above mixture was made for all the Nras PCR products. The only difference being reverse primer 910 bp, 600 bp or 200 bp added once at a time. The PCR mixtures were aliquoted into ten PCR tubes each and cycled in a Perkin Elmer 9600 at the following conditions: 95°C 3 min; 55°C 2 min, 72°C 3 min, 95°C 1 min (30 cycles); 55°C 2 min, 72°C 10 min and 4°C soak. 10 µl from each PCR reaction was analysed on a standard agarose gel and the expected fragments of approximately 910 bp, 600 bp and 200 bp were observed.

Assay conditions: Wells of a streptavidin coated micro-titer plate (Boehringer Mannheim; binding capacity of 20 pmol biotin per well) were incubated for 1 hour in 5 x SSCT (0.75 M NaCl, 75 mM citrate, pH 7.0, 0.1% Tween 20) at 37°C with either 1

pmol of DNA Nras Cap A (biotin-5'-TTCCACAGCACAA-3'), LNA/DNA Nras Cap A (biotin-5'-TTCCA**CAGC**ACAA-3'), LNA Nras Cap A (biotin-5'-**TTCCACAGCACA**A-3'), DNA Nras Cap B (biotin-5'-AGAGCCGATAACA-3'), LNA/DNA Nras Cap B (biotin-5'-AGAG**CCGATAACA**-3') or LNA Nras Cap B (biotin-5'-**AGAGCCGATAACA**-3'); LNA nucleosides in bold. The Nras Cap A capture probes capture amplicons Nras 910, Nras 600 and Nras 200. Nras Cap B capture probes capture specific amplicons Nras 910 and Nras 600. After incubation with the different capture probes, the wells were washed in 5 x SSCT and 5 µl native or denatured (95° C 5 min and 10 min on ice) DIG-labelled amplicons (Nras 910, Nras 600 or Nras 200) in 95 µl 1 x SSCT (0.15 M NaCl, 15 mM citrate, pH 7.0, 0.1% Tween 20) were added per well and incubated for 1 hour at 37°C. The wells were washed three times in phosphate buffered saline (1 x PBST, 0.15 M Na^+, pH 7.2, 0.05% Tween 20) and incubated 30 min at 37°C with 200 µl peroxidase labelled anti-DIG antibodies (Boehringer Mannheim, diluted 1:1000 in 1 x PBST). Finally the wells were washed three times in 1 x PBST and assayed for peroxidase activity by adding 100 µl of substrate solution (0.1 M citrate-phosphate buffer pH 5.0, 0.66 mg/ml ortho-pheylenediamine dihydrochloride, 0.012% H_2O_2) the reaction was stopped after 9 min by adding 100 µl 0.5 M H_2SO_4 and diluted 4 times in H_2SO_4 before the absorbance at 492 nm was read in a micro-titer plate reader. As shown in Figure 23A, capture probes spiked with 12 LNA nucleosides (LNA Nras Cap A and LNA Cap B) capture very efficiently the specific amplicons without prior denaturation (native amplicons). Capture probes spiked with 4 LNA nucleosides (LNA/DNA Nras Cap A and LNA/DNA Nras Cap B) capture the same amplicons with a lower efficiency and the DNA capture probes (DNA Nras Cap A and DNA Nras Cap B) do not capture the specific amplicons at all. The control amplicon, Nras 200, are not captured by the LNA Cap B or the LNA/DNA Nras Cap B probes demonstrating the exquisite specificity of the LNA spiked capture probes. Figure 23B shows the same experiment performed with denatured amplicons. Essentially the same picture emerges with the essential difference that capture efficiencies are generally increased. We conclude that LNA modified oligos containing mixed LNA nucleosides (A, T, G or C LNA nucleosides) function efficiently in sequence specific capture of PCR amplicons when immobilised on a solid surface. We further conclude that LNA offers a means to construct capture probes that will function efficiently in amplicon capture without prior denaturation i.e. capture by strand displacement. This ability facilitates a significant simplification of current amplicon detection formats based on DNA.

Example 147

LNA modified oligos function as primers for nucleic acid polymerases. The ability of an LNA modified oligo (5´-GGTGG**TTTG**TTTG-3´, LNA nucleosides in bold) to serve as primer in template dependent, enzymatic elongation were investigated with 3 different classes of polymerases. A reverse transcriptase M-MuLV (Boehringer Mannheim) which can use both RNA and DNA as template, the Klenow polymerase which is representative of standard DNA polymerases and a thermostable polymerase, BM-TAQ (Boehringer Mannheim). As control the extension reactions were conducted using the identical unmodified DNA primer (5´-GGTGGTTTGTTTG-3´). The LNA and DNA primers were labelled with ^{32}P-γ-ATP as previously described in Example 137. A 50mer DNA oligo (5´-AAAAATCGACGCTCAAGTCAGAAAAGCATCTCACAAACAAACAAAC-CACC-3´) was used as template. The reaction with *M-MuLV* (Boehringer Mannheim,) contained 2µl of either labelled LNA-primer or DNA primer (10µM), 2µl of DNA template (10µM), 2µl of 2mM dNTP, 2µl of 10 x buffer (500mM Tris-HCl, 300mM KCl, 60mM $MgCl_2$, 100mM DTT, pH 8.3 (37°C)), 1µl of enzyme (20U/µl) and water to 20µl. The reactions were incubated at 37°C for 60 min. The reaction with *Klenow polymerase* (USB) contained 2µl of either labelled LNA or DNA primer (10µM), 2µl of DNA template (10µM), 2µl of 2mM dNTP, 2µl of 10 x buffer (100mM Tris-HCl, 50mM $MgCl_2$, 75mM DTT, pH 7.5), 1µl of enzyme (10U/µl) and water to 20µl. The reactions were incubated at 37°C for 60 min. The reaction with *BM-Taq* (Boehringer Mannheim) contained 2µl of either labelled LNA or DNA-primer (10µM), 2µl of DNA template (10µM), 2µl of 2mM dNTP, 2µl of 10 x buffer (100mM Tris-HCl, 15mM $MgCl_2$, 50mM KCL, pH 8.3), 1µl of enzyme (5U/µl) and water to 20µl. The reactions were incubated at a starting temperature of 37°C and ramped at 1°C/min to 60°C where they were maintained for 30min. At the end of the incubation period the reactions were stopped by the addition of 10µl of loading buffer (0.25% (w/v) bromophenol blue, 0.25% (w/v) xylene cyanol, 80% (v/v) formamid). The samples were heated to 95°C for 1 min., placed on ice and 2µl was loaded onto a 8% sequencing polyacrylamide gel and electrophoresed on a Life Technologies Inc. BRL model 52. After electrophoresis the gel was dried on the glass plate and subjected to autoradiography (X-ray film: Kodak X-Omat AR). As shown in Figure 7, clear and similar extension products are observed with both the LNA and DNA primer when either the Klenow polymerase (lanes 3) or the BM-Taq polymerase (lanes 5) is used.

When M-MuLV reverse transcriptase is used (lanes 2) an extension product can be detected only in the case of the LNA-primer. The labelled LNA and DNA primer that have not been subjected to enzymatic elongation are present in lanes 1, 4 and 6. We conclude that the incorporation of LNA nucleosides into standard DNA oligos does not prevent recognition of the oligo/template duplex by nucleic acid polymerases. We further conclude that LNA modified oligos act as efficiently as primers as unmodified DNA oligos.

Example 148

LNA modified oligo functions as primers in target amplification processes. The ability of LNA modified oligos to act as primers in PCR amplification was analysed with three oligos differing only in the number of LNA nucleosides they contained: 4 LNA nucleosides (AL2 primer: 5´-GGTGG**TTTG**TTTG-3´, LNA nucleosides in bold), 1 LNA nucleoside (AL10 primer: 5´-GGTGGTTTGTTTG-3´, LNA nucleoside in bold) and no LNA nucleoside (FP2 primer: 5´-GGTGGTTTGTTTG-3´). The PCR reactions (100µl) contained either no template (control), 0.01ng, 0.1ng or 1ng of template (pUC19 plasmid), 0.2µM reverse primer (5´-GTGGTTCGCTCCAAGCTG-3´), 0.2µM of either the AL2, AL10 or FP2 forward primer, 200µM of dATP, dGTP, dCTP and dTTP, 10mM Tris-HCl pH 8.3, 1.5mM $MgCl_2$, 50mM KCl and 2.5U of the BM-Taq polymerase. A total of 50 cycles each consisting of 94°C 1min. - 45°C 1min. - 72°C 1.5min. were conducted (with an additional 2.5U of Taq polymerase added after the first 30 cycles) on a Techne Genius thermocycler. After the final cycle the reactions were incubated at 72°C 3min. and then at 4°C overnight. To 30µl of each reaction was added 6µl of loading buffer (0.25% (w/v) bromophenol blue and 40% (v/v) glycerol) and the samples (together with a Amplisize™ size marker) were loaded onto a 2% agarose gel and electrophoresed for 45min. at 150V. Finally, the gel was stained with ethidiumbromid and photographed. As shown in Figure 8 the PCR reactions using the unmodified forward primer FP2 and unmodified reverse primer generates detectable amplicons of the correct sizes with all amounts of template used (lane 9: 0.01ng template, lane 10: 0.1ng and lane 11: 1ng). No signal is obtained in the control reaction without template (lane 12). When the FP2 forward primer is replaced by the primer containing 1 central LNA nucleoside (AL10) amplicons are also detected with all amounts of template used (lane 5: 0.01ng, lane 6: 0.1ng and lane 7: 1ng). This clearly indicates that the AL10 primer sustains an exponential amplification. *i.e.* the

AL10 primer can be both extended and used as template in its entirety. Again, the control reaction without template (lane 8) does not produce an amplicon. When the FP2 forward primer is replaced by the primer containing 4 central LNA nucleosides (AL2), amplicons of the correct size cannot be detected in any of the reactions. (lane 1: 0.01ng template, lane 2: 0.1ng, lane 3: 1ng and lane 4: no template). With the highest concentration of template (1ng), however, a high molecular weight band appears in the gel (lane 3). This, however, is an artefact of the RP1 primer as indicated by the control reaction wherein each of the primers AL2 (lane A), AL10 (lane B), FP2 (lane C) and RP1 (lane D) were tested for their ability to produce an amplicon with the highest amount of template (1ng). Since AL2 was shown to act as a primer in Example 147, the absence of detectable amplicons strongly indicates that it lacks the ability to act as a template, *i.e.* the block of 4 consecutive LNA nucleosides blocks the advance of the polymerase thereby turning the reaction into a linear amplification (the product of which would not be detectable by the experimental set-up used). We conclude that LNA modified oligos can be used as primers in PCR amplification. We further conclude that the degree of amplification (graded from fully exponential to linear amplification) can be controlled by the design of the LNA modified oligo. We note that the possibility to block the advance of the polymerase by incorporating LNA nucleosides into the primer facilitates the generation of amplicons carrying single stranded ends. Such ends are readily accessible to hybridisation without denaturation of the amplicon and this feature could be useful in many applications.

Example 149

An LNA modified oligomer carrying a 5´anthraquinone can be covalently immobilised on a solid support by irradiation and the immobilised oligomer is efficient in the capture of a complementary DNA oligo. Either 25 pmol/µl or 12.5 pmol/µl of an anthraquinone DNA oligo (5'-AQ-CAG CAG TCG ACA GAG-3') or an anthraquinone LNA modified DNA oligo (5'-AQ-CAG CAG TCG ACA GAG-3'; LNA monomer is underlined) was spotted (1 µl/spot) in 0.2 M LiCl on a polycarbonate slide (Nunc). The oligos were irradiated for 15 min with soft UV light. After irradiation the slide was washed three times in Milli-Q water and air-dried. 25ml of 0.5 pmol/µl of complimentary biotinylated oligomer (5'-biotin- CTC TGT CGA CTG CTG-3') was hybridised to the immobilised oligomers in 5 x SSCT (75 mM Citrate, 0.75 M NaCl, pH 7.0, 0.1% Tween 20) at 50°C for 2 hours. After washing four times with 1 x SSCT

and one time phosphate buffered saline (PBST, 0.15 M Na^+, pH 7.2, 0.05% Tween 20),25ml PBST containing 0.06 µg/ml streptavidin conjugated horse radish peroxidase and 1 µg/ml streptavidin were added to the slide. The slide was incubated for 30 min and washed 4 times with 25ml PBST. The slide was visualised by using chemo-luminescent substrate (SuperSignal; Pierce) as described by the manufacturer and X-ray film (CL-XPosure film, Pierce 34075). As shown in Figure 9 both the AQ-DNA oligo and the AQ-LNA modified DNA oligo yields a clearly detectable signal. We conclude that anthraquinone linked LNA modified DNA oligos can be efficiently attached to a solid surface by irradiation and that oligos attached in this ways are able to hybridise to their complementary target DNA oligos.

Example 150

Hybridisation and detection on an array with different LNA modified Cy3-labelled 8mers. *Slide preparation:* Glass slides were aminosilanised using a 10% solution of amino propyl triethoxy silane in acetone followed by washing in acetone. The following oligonucleotides were spotted out onto the slides:

Oligo used	Oligo sequence	Pens 1 + 2 + 3	Sequence cf. probes
Seq. 3	5'-GTA TGG AG-3'	1pmol/µl	1 internal mismatch
Seq. 6	5'-GTA TGA AG-3'	1pmol/µl	match

Ten repeat spots, approximately 1 nl each spot, were performed for each oligonucleotide from each pen on each of 12 slides.

Probes (LNA monomers in bold):

a) Seq. No.aZ1 5'-Cy3-CTT CAT AC-3'

b) Seq. No.aZ2 5'-Cy3-CTT CAT AC-3'

c) Seq. No.aZ3 5'-Cy3-CTT CAT AC-3'

d) Seq. No.16 5'-Cy3-CTT CAT AC-3'

Slides and conditions for hybridisation:

Slides 1, 2 and 3 hybridised with aZ1 probe @ 300fmol/µl, 30fmol/µl, 3fmol/µl

Slides 4, 5 and 6 hybridised with aZ2 probe @ 300fmol/µl, 30fmol/µl, 3fmol/µl

Slides 7, 8 and 9 hybridised with aZ3 probe @ 300fmol/µl, 30fmol/µl, 3fmol/µl

Slides 10, 11 and 12 hybridised with seq. 16 probe @ 300fmol/µl, 30fmol/µl, 3fmol/µl

A probe diluted in 30µl hybridisation buffer (5 x SSC, 7% sodium lauryl sarcosine) was pipetted along the length of each slide, covered with a coverslip, and placed into a plastic box on top of a plastic insert, which was lying on a paper towel wetted with water. Boxes were covered with aluminium foil to keep light out, and incubated at +4°C overnight.

Slide Washes: Coverslips were removed and the slides inserted in racks (6 slides per rack) which were placed in glass slide dishes, wrapped in foil:

Slide Number	Wash buffer (4°C)	Wash time	Probe sequence
1, 2, 3	5 x SSC, 0.1% Tween-20	2 x 5 min	Seq. No. aZ1
4, 5, 6	5 x SSC, 0.1% Tween-20	2 x 5 min	Seq. No. aZ2
7, 8, 9	5 x SSC, 0.1% Tween-20	2 x 5 min	Seq. No. aZ3
10, 11, 12	5 x SSC, 0.1% Tween-20	2 x 5 min	Seq. No. 16

After washing, slides were blow-dried and scanned. The fluorescence was imaged on a slide scanner and the data analysed from ImageQuant software (Molecular Dynamics). As shown in Figure 11, no binding of the Cy3 labelled probes is observed to the mismatched oligo 3 with either the unmodified probe (slide 10-12), single LNA modified probe aZ1 (slide 1-3) single LNA modified probe aZ2 (slide 4-6) or triple LNA modified probe aZ3 (slide 7-9) (i.e. the obtained signal with the mismatched oligo 3 is comparable to the background signal). With complementary oligo 6, specific signals are observed in all cases. The intensity of these signals clearly correlates with the number of LNAs present in the probes and with the concentration of the probes. Each LNA T residue approximately increased the signal strength by about a factor of 2 over that of the normal DNA oligo probe, i.e. aZ1 and aZ2 = 2x signal of sequence 16, and aZ3 = 8x signal of sequence 16. The match/mismatch discrimination is good with the LNA T base replacements, and with the increased signal strength, the mismatch discriminations appear to be easier.

Example 151

Hybridisation and detection of end mismatches on an array with LNA modified Cy3-labelled 8mers. *Slide preparation:*Glass slides were aminosilanised using a 10%

solution of amino propyl triethoxy silane in acetone followed by washing in acetone.

The following oligonucleotides were spotted out at 1pmol/µl onto the slides:

Seq No.9 5'-GTGTGGAG-3'

Seq No.15 5'-GTGTGGAA-3'

Seq No.131 5'-GTGTGGAT-3'

Seq No.132 5'-GTGTGGAC-3'

Seq No.133 5'-ATGTGGAA-3'

Seq No.134 5'-CTGTGGAA-3'

Seq No.135 5'-TTGTGGAA-3'

Ten repeat spots, approximately 1 nl each spot, were performed for each oligonucleotide from each of 6 pens on each of 12 slides.

Probes (LNA monomers in bold)*:*

DNA

Probe No.1: 5'-Cy3-TTCCACAC-3'

Probe No.2: 5'-Cy3-GTCCACAC-3'

Probe No.3: 5'-Cy3-ATCCACAC-3'

Probe No.4: 5'-Cy3-CTCCACAC-3'

Probe No.5: 5'-Cy3-TTCCACAT-3'

Probe No.6: 5'-Cy3-TTCCACAG-3'

LNA

Probe No.35Z-1: 5'-Cy3-**TT**CCACAC-3'

Probe No.35Z-2: 5'-Cy3-**GT**CCACAC-3'

Probe No.35Z-3: 5'-Cy3-**AT**CCACAC-3'

Probe No.35Z-4: 5'-Cy3-**CT**CCACAC-3'

Probe No.35Z-5: 5'-Cy3-**TT**CCACAT-3'

Probe No.35Z-6: 5'-Cy3-**TT**CCACAG-3'

Probes with LNA monomers are prefixed with 35Z- as part of the sequence number. Specific LNA monomers are indicated in italics/bold and are situated at the 3' and 5' ends of the LNA oligos.

Slides and conditions for hybridisation: Each probe sequence was hybridised on a separate slide, and all probe concentrations were 1fmol/µl. Each probe was diluted in hybridisation buffer (5 x SSC, 7% sodium lauryl sarcosine), of which 30µl was

pipetted along the length of each slide, covered with a coverslip, and placed into a plastic box on top of a plastic insert, which was lying on a paper towel wetted with water. Boxes were covered with aluminium foil to keep light out, and incubated at +4°C overnight.

Slide Washes: Coverslips were removed and the slides inserted in racks (8 slides per rack) which were placed in glass slide dishes, wrapped in foil. All slides were washed in 5 x SSC for 2 x 5 min at +4°C. After washing, slides were blow-dried and scanned. The fluorescence was imaged on a slide scanner and the data analyzed from ImageQuant software (Molecular Dynamics).

Conclusions: As shown in Figures 12 and 13, probes containing LNA nucleosides at their 5' and 3' ends are in the majority of cases significantly better in discriminating between matched and mismatched target sequences than their corresponding unmodified oligonucleotides.

For DNA oligos, C=T mismatches were the most difficult to distinguish, for example, where probe sequence 1 hybridised to target sequence 132 and where probe sequence 5 hybridised to target sequence 134. Other mismatches were visible such as T=T and G=T mismatches, but these spots were less intense, for example where probe sequences 5 and 6 respectively hybridised to target sequence 135. The LNA oligos, significantly reduced these C=T and T=T mismatch spot intensites, to comparable levels to other mismatches. The relative spot intensities of probe sequences 1, 2 and 3 were similar for the DNA and LNA oligos. However, with probe sequences 4, 5 and 6, the LNA oligos gave a significantly increased spot intensity when hybridised to their match target sequences 9, 133 and 134 respectively.

Example 152

Hybridization and detection of end mismatches on an array with AT and all LNA modified Cy3-labelled 8mers. *Slide preparation:* Glass slides were aminosilanized using a 10% solution of amino propyl triethoxy silane in acetone followed by washing in acetone. The following oligonucleotides were spotted out at 1pmol/µl onto the slides:

Seq No.9 5'-GTGTGGAG-3'

Seq No.15 5'-GTGTGGAA-3'

Seq No.131 5'-GTGTGGAT-3'

Seq No.132 5'-GTGTGGAC-3'

Seq No.133 5'-ATGTGGAA-3'

Seq No.134 5'-CTGTGGAA-3'

Seq No.135 5'-TTGTGGAA-3'

Ten repeat spots, approximately 1 nl each spot, were performed for each oligonucleotide from each of 6 pens on each of 36 slides.

Probes: (LNA monomers in bold):

DNA:

Probe No.1: 5'-Cy3-TTCCACAC-3'

Probe No.2: 5'-Cy3-GTCCACAC-3'

Probe No.3: 5'-Cy3-ATCCACAC-3'

Probe No.4: 5'-Cy3-CTCCACAC-3'

Probe No.5: 5'-Cy3-TTCCACAT-3'

Probe No.6: 5'-Cy3-TTCCACAG-3'

AT LNA:

Probe No.ATZ-1: 5'-Cy3-TTCCACAC-3'

Probe No.ATZ-2: 5'-Cy3-GTCCACAC-3'

Probe No.ATZ-3: 5'-Cy3-**A**TCCACAC-3'

Probe No.ATZ-4: 5'-Cy3-CTCCACAC-3'

Probe No.ATZ-5: 5'-Cy3-TTCCACAT-3'

Probe No.ATZ-6: 5'-Cy3-TTCCACAG-3'

All LNA:

Probe No.AllZ-1: 5'-Cy3-**TTCCACAC**-3'

Probe No.AllZ-2: 5'-Cy3-**GTCCACAC**-3'

Probe No.AllZ-3: 5'-Cy3-**ATCCACAC**-3'

Probe No.AllZ-4: 5'-Cy3-CTCCACAC-3'

Probe No.AllZ-5: 5'-Cy3-TTCCACAT-3'

Probe No.AllZ-6: 5'-Cy3-TTCCACAG-3'

Probes with LNA monomers are prefixed with ATZ- or AllZ- as part of the sequence number. Specific LNA monomers are indicated in italics for the LNA oligos.

Slides and conditions for hybridization: Each probe sequence was hybridized on a separate slide, and all probe concentrations were 1fmol/µl. Each probe was diluted in hybridization buffer (5 x SSC, 7% sodium lauryl sarcosine), of which 30µl was pipetted along the length of each slide, covered with a coverslip, and placed into a plastic box on top of a plastic insert, which was lying on a paper towel wetted with water. Boxes were covered with aluminium foil to keep light out, and incubated at room temperature overnight.

Slide Washes: Coverslips were removed and the slides inserted in racks (9 slides per rack) which were placed in glass slide dishes, wrapped in foil. All slides were washed in 5 x SSC for 2 x 5 minutes at RT. After washing, slides were blow-dried and scanned. The fluorescence was imaged on a slide scanner and the data analyzed from ImageQuant software (Molecular Dynamics).

Conclusion: As shown in Figures 15A, 15B and 15C, The average intensity of DNA hybridization at room temperature was about 10% of the intensity achieved with the AT or all LNA modified oligos. No spots were seen on slides hybridized with DNA probes 5 and 6. These conditions were therefore not optimal for the DNA probes. However, the match / mismatch discrimination is very good with the LNA nucleoside replacements at the A and T bases. The stringency for the all LNA oligos may not be great enough as the match / mismatch discrimination was not as good as for the AT LNA oligos.

The oligos with LNA modifications worked very well, and the mismatches that were the most difficult to discriminate were;

Probe 1 to target 135 = CT mismatch

Probe 2 to target 131 = GT mismatch

Probe 3 to target 15 = AA mismatch

Probe 4 to target 131 = CT mismatch

Probe 5 to target 135 = TT mismatch

Probe 6 to target 135 = GT mismatch

Probe 6 to target 133 = GA mismatch

The AT LNA oligos gave good discrimination where these mismatch spot intensities were typically at the most 50% of the intensity of the match spots. For these mismatches, the all LNA oligos gave mismatch spot intensities about 50 to 70% of the match spot intensities. Overall, LNA modifications allows the use of higher temperatures for hybridizations and washes, and end mismatches can be discriminated. These results are at least as good as those from DNA probes hybridised at 4°C (see example 151).

Example 153

Use of [α^{33}P] ddNTP's and ThermoSequenase™ DNA Polymerase to Sequence DNA Templates Containing LNA T Monomers. Radiolabelled terminator sequencing reactions were set up in order to test the ability of the LNA T monomer to be accepted as a template for DNA polymerases. The 15mer primer (sequence: 5'- TGC ATG TGC TGG AGA -3') was used to prime the following short oligonucleotide sequences (LNA monomer in bold):

Template 1 3'- ACG TAC ACG ACC TCT ACC TTG CTA -5'

TemplateTZ1 3'- ACG TAC ACG ACC TCT ACC TTG CTA -5'

The following reaction mixes were made:

Template 1 mix:

2µl x16 ThermoSequenase Buffer

	6µl	Primer 2pmole/µl
	6µl	Template 1 1pmole/µl
	4µl	Water
	2µl	ThermoSequenase DNA Polymerase (4U/µl)
	20µl	Total volume

Template TZ1 mix

	2µl	x16 ThermoSequenase Buffer
	6µl	Primer 2pmole/µl
	6µl	Template TZ1 1pmole/µl
	4µl	Water
	2µl	ThermoSequenase DNA Polymerase (4U/µl)
	20µl	Total volume

2µl Nucleotide mix (7.5µM each dNTP) was added to each of 8 Eppendorf tubes. 0.5µl [α^{33}P] ddATP was added to tubes 1 and 5. 0.5µl [α^{33}P] ddCTP was added to tubes 2 and 6. 0.5µl [α^{33}P] ddGTP was added to Tubes 3 and 7. 0.5µl [α^{33}P] ddTTP was added to tubes 4 and 8. 4.5µl of Template 1 mix was added to each of tubes 1-4. 4.5µl of Template TZ1 mix was added to each of tubes 5-8. All the reactions were incubated at 60°C for 3 min. The reactions were stopped by the addition of 4µl formamide/EDTA stop solution. Reactions were heated at 95°C for 3 min before loading onto a 19% polyacrylamide 7M urea gel. The gel was fixed in 10% acetic acid 10% methanol before transferring to 3MM paper and drying. The dried gel was exposed to Kodak Biomax autoradiography film.

The results are depicted in Figure 18 (track 1-4) and Figure 19 (5-8). The tracks correspond to the following reactions: (Figure 18): Lane 1 - ddATP track. Lane 2 - ddCTP track. Lane 3 - ddGTP track, Lane 4 - ddTTP track. Lane 5 - 8-32 base oligo markers; Figure 19: Lane A - 8-32 base oligo markers. Lane 5 - ddATP track. Lane 6 - ddCTP track. Lane 7 - ddGTP track. Lane 8 - ddTTP track.

As is evident from Figures 18 and 19, the full sequence of both templates can easily be read from the autorad. The sequence is 5'-TGG AAC GTA- 3' which corresponds to

the template sequence 3'-ACC TTG CTA- 5'. This shows that a single LNA T monomer can act as a template for DNA polymerases. The LNA T monomer is specifically copied as "T" with ddATP being incorporated.

Therapeutic applications

Example 154

LNA modified oligos can be transferred into cells. Experiment with radiolabelled LNA oligos. 10 pmol of a oligodeoxynucleotide (ODN) (ODN#10: 5'-TTA ACG TAG GTG CTG GAC TTG TCG CTG TTG TAC TT-3', a 35-mer complementary to human Cathepsin D) and 10 pmoles of two LNA oligos: AL16 (5'-d(**TGT GTG AAA TTG TTA** T)-3', LNA nucleosides in bold) and AL17 (5'-d(**ATA AAG TGT AAA** G)-3', LNA nucleosides in bold) were mixed with T4 polynucleotide Kinase (10 units, BRL cat. no. 510-8004SA), 5 µl gamma-^{32}P-ATP 5000 Ci/mmol, 10 uCi/µl (Amersham) in kinase buffer (50 mM Tris/HCl pH 7,6, 10 mM $MgCl_2$, 5 mM DTT, 0.1 mM EDTA). The samples were incubated for 45 min at 37°C and afterwards heated to 68°C for 10 min, and then moved to +0 °C. Unincorporated nucleotides were removed by passage over Chroma Spin TE-10 columns (Clontech cat. no. K1320-1). The yields were $5x10^5$ cpm/µl , $2x10^5$ cpm/µl and $0.8x10^5$ cpm/µl for ODN#10, AL16 and AL17, respectively. MCF-7 human breast cancer cells originally obtained from the Human Cell Culture Bank (Mason Research Institute, Rockville) were cultured in DME/F12 culture medium (1:1) supplemented with 1% heat inactivated fetal calf serum (Gibco BRL), 6 ng/ml bovine insulin (Novo) and 2.5 mM glutamax (Life Technologies) in 25 cm^2 cell culture flasks (Nunclon, NUNC) and incubated in a humified incubator at 37°C, 5%CO_2, 20%O_2, 75%N_2. The MCF-7 cells were approximately 40% confluent at the time of the experiment. A small amount (less than 0.1 pmol) of the kinased oligos were mixed with 1.5 µg pEGFP-NI plasmid (Clontech cat. no. 60851) and mixed with 100 µl diluted FuGENE6 transfection agent (Boehringer Mannheim cat no. 1 814 443), dilution: 5µl FuGENE6 in 95 µl DME/F12 culture medium without serum. The FuGENE6/DNA/oligo-mixture were added directly to the culture medium (5 ml) of adherent growing MCF-7 cells and incubated with the cells for 18 hours, closely following the manufacturers directions. Three types of experiments were set up. 1) ODN#10 + pEGFP-NI; 2) AL16 + pEGFP-NI; 3) AL17 + pEGFP-NI. Cellular uptake of DNA/LNA material were studied by removing FuGENE6/DNA/oligo-mixture containing

medium (an aliquot was transferred to a scintillator vial). Cells were rinced once with phosphate buffered saline (PBS), fresh culture medium was added and cells inspected by fluorescence microscopy. Approximately 30% of the transfected cells contained green fluorescent material, indicating that approximately 30% of the cells have taken up the pEGFP-NI plasmid and expressed the green fluorescent protein coded by this plasmid. Following fluorescence microscopy the adherent MCF-7 cells were removed from the culture flasks. Briefly, the culture medium was removed, then cells were rinsed with a solution of 0.25% trypsin (Gibco BRL) 1 mM EDTA in PBS (without Mg^{2+} and Ca^{2+}), 1 ml trypsin/EDTA was added and cells were incubated 10 min at 37°C. During the incubation the cells loosened and were easily resuspended and transferred to scintillator vials. The cells were then completely dissolved by addition of 10 ml Optifluor scintillation coctail (Packard cat. no. 6013199), and the vials were counted in a Wallac 1409 scintillation counter. The results were as follows: 1) ODN#10 + pEGFP-NI: approximately 1.4% of the added radioactivity were associated with cellular material; 2) AL16 + pEGFP-NI: approximately 0.8% of the added radioactivity were associated with cellular material; and 3) AL17 + pEGFP-NI: approximately 0.4% of the added radioactivity were associated with cellular material. We conclude that 0.4 - 0.8% of the added LNA oligos were taken up by the cells.

Example 155

LNA is efficiently delivered to living human MCF-7 breast cancer cells. To increase the efficiency of LNA-uptake by human MCF-7 cells different transfection agents were tested with various concentrations of 5'FITC-labelled LNAs and DNA. The oligonucleotides described in the table below were tested.

Table: Oligonucleotides tested

Name	Sequence (LNA monomers in bold)	Characteristics
AL16	5'-**TGT GTG AAA TTG TTA** T-3'	LNA, enzym. FITC-labeled
AL17	5'-**ATA AAG TGT AAA** G-3'	LNA, enzym. FITC-labeled
EQ3009-01	5'-**TGC CTG CAG GTC GAC** T-3'	LNA-FITC-labeled
EQ3008-01	5'-TGC CTG CAG GTC GAC T-3'	DNA-FITC-labeled

AL16 and AL17 were enzymatically labelled with FITC as described in Example 128. EQ3009-01 and EQ3008-01 were labelled with FITC by standard solid phase chemistry. Three transfection agents were tested: FuGENE-6 (Boehringer Mannheim cat. no. 1 814 443), SuperFect (Quiagen cat. no. 301305) and Lipofectin (GibcoBRL cat. no. 18292-011). Human MCF-7 breast cancer cells were cultured as described previously (Example 154). Three days before the experiments the cells were seeded at a cell density of approx. 0.8 x 10^4 cells per cm^2. Depending on the type of experiment the MCF-7 cells were seeded in standard T25 flasks (Nunc, LifeTechnologies cat. no. 163371A), 24 wells multidish (Nunc, LifeTechnologies cat. no. 143982A) or slide flasks (Nunc, LifeTechnologies cat. no. 170920A). The experiments were performed when cells were 30 - 40 % confluent. Cellular uptake of LNA and DNA was studied at serum-free conditions, i.e. the normal serum containing DME/F12 medium was removed and replaced with DME/F12 without serum before the transfection-mixture was added to the cells. Under these conditions SuperFect proved to be toxic to the MCF-7 cells. Transfection mixtures consisting of SuperFect and either plasmid DNA (pEGFP-N1, Clontech cat. no. 6085-1), oligo DNA or oligo LNA was equally toxic to MCF-7 cells. In contrast to SuperFect, FuGene6 and Lipofectin worked well with plasmid DNA (pEGFP-N1). However, only lipofectin was capable of efficient delivery of oligonucleotides to living MCF-7. Briefly, efficient delivery of FITC-labelled LNA and DNA to MCF-7 cells was obtained by culturing the cells in DME/F12 with 1% FCS to approx. 40% confluence. The Lipofectin reagent was then diluted 40 X in DME/F12 medium without serum and combined with the oligo to a concentration of 750 nM

oligo. The oligo-Lipofectin complex was allowed to form for 15 min at r.t., and further diluted with serum-free medium to at final concentration of 250 nM oligo, 0.8 ug/ml Lipofectin. Then, the medium was removed from the cells and replaced with the medium containing oligo-Lipofectin complex. The cells were incubated at 37°C for 6 hours, rinsed once with DME/F12 medium without serum and incubated for a further 18 hours in DME/F12 with 1% FCS at 37°C. The result of the experiment was evaluated either directly on living cells in culture flasks or in 24 wells multidishes or on cells cultured in slide flasks and fixed in 4% ice-cold PFA. In all cases a Leica DMRB fluorescence microscope equipped with a high resolution CCD camera was used. The result with living cells is shown in Figure 16 and the result with fixed cells cultured in slide flask is shown in Figure 17. Both the cells in Figures 16 and 17 was transfected with the FITC-labelled AL16 LNA molecule. By counting total number of cells and green fluorescent cells in several fields we observe that FITC-labelled AL16 LNA was transfected into approximately 35% of the MCF-7 cells. Importantly, we saw that the LNA predominantly was localised in the nuclei of the cells (Figure 17). This is noteworthy, since nuclear uptake of fluorescent oligos correlates with their antisense activity (Stein C.A. et al. (1997) Making sense of antisense: A debate. In HMS Beagle: A BioMedNet Publication (http://hmsbeagle.com/06/cutedge/overwiev.htm)). Increasing the amount of oligo and lipofectin up to a final concentration of 1250 nM oligo and 4 ug/ml lipofectin only increased the percentage of green fluorescent cells marginally. Increasing the concentration even further was toxic for the cells. Similar results were obtained with the other LNAs and the FITC-labelled oligo DNA (see the table above). We conclude that: 1) LNA can be efficiently delivered to living MCF-7 breast cancer cells by Lipofectin-mediated transfection. 2) A consistent high fraction, 30% or more of cells, is transfected using a final concentration of 250 nM LNA, 0,8 ug Lipofectin pr. ml growth medium without serum. Increasing the concentrations of LNA and Lipofectin up to 5 times only increased the transfection yield marginally. 3) The procedure transfected the LNA into the nuclei of the cells, which according to literature is a good indication that such transfected LNAs may exhibit antisense effects on cells.

Example 156

LNA modified oligos can be transferred into cells. Experiment with fluorescein labelled LNA oligos. Two LNA oligos: AL16 (5'-**TGT GTG AAA TTG TTA T**-3', LNA

nucleosides in bold) and AL17 (5'-**ATA AAG TGT AAA** G-3', LNA nucleosides in bold) were labeled with fluorescein as described in Example 128. MCF-7 human breast cancer cells were cultured as described in Example 154. Three types of experiments were set up. 1) approximately 1.5 μg FITC-labelled AL16; 2) approximately 1.5 μg FITC-labelled AL17; and 3) approximately 0.75 μg FITC-labelled AL16 and 0.75 μg pRSVβgal plasmid (a plasmid expressing the bacterial lac Z gene coded enzyme β-galactosidase, Tulchinsky et. al. (1992) PNAS, **89**, 9146-50). The two LNA oligos and the LNA-plasmid mix were mixed with FuGENE6 and added to MCF-7 cells as described in Example 154. After incubation for 18 hours cellular uptake of the LNA oligos were assessed by fluorescence microscopy of the cell cultures. A part of the treated cells contained green fluorescent material (see Figure 16), indicating that cells take up the fluorescein labelled LNA. The fluorescein labelled AL16 appeared superior to fluorescein labelled AL17 in this respect. After fluorescence microscopy the culture medium were removed from the cells treated both with fluorescein labelled AL16 and pRSVβgal. The cells were washed once with PBS, fixed in 2% (v/v) formaldehyde, 0.2% (v/v) glutaraldehyde at 4°C for 5 min and β-galactosidase containing cells were stained blue with X-gal (5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indoyl β-D-galactopyranosid) which turns from colorless to blue in the presence of β-galactosidase activity. The X-gal staining showed that the pRSVβgal effectively had been transferred into cells. We conclude that the fluorescein LNA oligos were taken up by the cells.

Example 157

LNA modified oligos are relatively stable under cell culture conditions. Following fluorescence microscopy as described in Example 156 cells treated only with the fluorescein labelled AL16 LNA were allowed to incubate for an additional 3 days. During this period of time the number of green fluorescent cells appeared unaltered. We conclude that fluorescein labelled LNA oligos has a good stability under the conditions prevailing in cell culture.

Example 158

Blockade by Antisense Locked Nucleic Acids (LNA) of [D-Ala2]Deltorphin-Induced Antinociception in the Warm Water Tail Flick Test in Conscious Rats. Male Sprague-Dawley rats (300 g) were implanted with an intrathecal (i.th). polyethylene catheter and allowed to recover for at least 5 days before start of injections (including

controls). The antisense LNA compounds (12.5 and 2.5 μg per injection) were administered in a 5 μl volume twice-daily (08.00 and 17.00 h) for 3 days. No signs of non-specific effects or toxicity could be detected, as shown by observations of locomotor behavior and measurements of body weight. The day after the last injection the rats were injected with [D-Ala2]deltorphin (60μg, i.th) and tested in the warm water (52°C) tail flick test for δ opioid receptor-mediated antinociception. Data are presented in Figure 14 as medians based on 6-8 animals per group (data converted to percent maximum possible response, % MPE). Statistical analyses were performed by means of Kruskal-Wallis 1-way ANOVA by ranks, followed by comparisons of treatments versus control. As shown in Figure 14, deltorphin produced a robust antinociceptive effect in saline-treated controls. This response was statistically significantly suppressed in both antisense LNA groups (12.5 and 2.5 μg) as compared with saline-treated controls.

LNA Solid Supports

Example 159

General method for DMT-LNA nucleoside succinates. Base protected DMT-LNA nucleoside and succinic anhydride (1.5 equivalents) were taken in anhydrous ethylene dichloride (~10 ml/g of nucleoside). To the mixture, triethylamine (2 equivalents) was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature. Reaction was followed by HPLC (conditions same as for tritylation). After complete reaction (>95%), reaction mixture was concentrated, coevaporated with ethylene dichloride and acetonitrile, and dried *in vacuo* to remove triethylamine. Residue was dissolved in ethylene dichloride or ethyl acetate (~100 ml/g of starting nucleoside), washed with cold 10% citric acid (3 x 80 ml/g) and cold water (3 x 80 ml/g). Organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated with or without addition of 1-2 equivalents of triethylamine. Residual solid was coevaporated with anhydrous acetonitrile (2-3x) and dried *in vacuo* to give pure product as white solid.

General method for LNA nucleoside supports. Base protected DMT-LNA-nucleoside succinate (free acid or triethylammonium salt, 65 micromol/g of support), amino derivatised support (Primer Support™ 30HL, 160 micromol amino groups/g of support), DMAP (3 mg/g of support) and 1-(3-[dimethylamino]propyl)-3-ethylcarbodimide hydrochloride (80 mg/g of support) were taken in anhydrous pyridine

(6 ml/g of support). To this mixture, triethylamine (16 microliter/g of support) was added and the mixture was kept on a shaker at 150 rpm overnight. Support was filtered, washed with methanol (3 x 10 ml/g of support) and dichloromethane (3 x 10 ml/g of support). After air drying, support was dried *in vacuo* for 0.5h. To this 6% DMAP in anhydrous acetonitrile (Cap A, ~ 3 ml/g of support) and a mixture of 20% acetic anhydride/ 30% 2,4,6-collidine/ 50% acetonitrile (Cap B, ~ 3 ml/g of support) were added. The micture was kept on shaker for 5h. Support was filtered, washed with anhydrous dichloromethane (2 x 10 ml/g of support) and dried as above. It was resuspended in a mixture of Cap A and Cap B (total vol. 6 ml/g of support) and kept on shaker overnight. Support was filtered, washed with methanol (6 x 10 ml/g of support), dichloromethane (3 x 10 ml/g of support) and dried in air. It was further dried *in vacuo* for 5-6h. Loading was determined by dimethoxytrityl assay and was found to be approx. 40 µmol/g.

Example 160

First Strand cDNA Synthesis Using Poly dT Primers Containing LNA T monomers.

Reactions were set up in order to test the ability of poly dT primers containing LNA T residues to prime 1st strand cDNA synthesis. The following poly dT primers were tested (LNA monomers are in bold):

RTZ1 5'-**TTT TTT TTT TTT** TT-3'

RTZ2 5'-**TTT TTT TTT TTT** TT-3'

RTZ3 5'-**TTT TTT TTT TTT** TT-3'

RTZ4 5'-**TTT TTT TTT TTT** TT-3'

RTZ5 5'-**TTT TTT TTT** T-3'

Anchored poly dT primer from RPK0140 kit Cy Dye cDNA labelling kit (Amersham Pharmacia Biotech) was as a control.

Reactions were set up as follows for each of the primers above:

1µl	Arabidopsis mRNA 0.5µg/µl
2µl	poly dT primer 8pmoles/µl
4µl	x5 AMV Reverse Transcriptase buffer
1µl	Water
8µl	Total volume

This mix was then heated to 75°C for 3 min and then allowed to cool at room temperature for at least 10 min.

The following was then added to each of the reactions:

1µl	80mM Sodium Pyrophosphate
1µl	Human Placental Ribonuclease Inhibitor 20U/µl
7µl	0.5mM dNTP solution
2µl	[α^{33}P] dATP 10mCi/ml 3000Ci/mmole
1µl	AMV Reverse Transcriptase 20U/µl
20µl	Total volume

The reactions were incubated at 42°C for 2 hours. The reactions were then heated at 95°C for 3 min before loading onto a 6% polyacrylamide 7M urea gel. The gel was fixed in 10% acetic acid / 10% methanol before transferring to 3MM paper and drying. The dried gel was exposed to Kodak Biomax autoradiography film overnight.

The autoradiograph clearly showed that the LNA containing oligonucleotide primers RTZ1-4 were able to efficiently prime cDNA synthesis. The amount and intensity of the cDNA products produced in these reactions was equal to that produced with the anchored poly dT control oligonucleotide. RTZ 5 did produce some cDNA, but the yield was significantly lower than that produced with the control oligo primer.

Example 161

LNA-modified oligonuclotides covalently attached to Separose beads function efficiently in the sequence specific capture of RNA molecules. Three oligos were synthesised by chemistry (Amy Mueller) for evaluation in poly (rA) binding.

- NH_2(T8)-T Control
- NH_2(T15)-T Control
- NH_2(LNA-T8)-T Test

200 nmol of each oligo were coupled to 50 mg of prepared CNBr-activated Separose 4B (Pharmacia) per booklet instructions. Unreacted binding sites on the resin were blocked in 100 nM Tris pH 8.0.

Table of Oligo Binding Data

Steps	T9 oligo A_{260} units	T16 oligos A_{260} units	LNA T9 oligo A_{260} units	No oligo Control
Oligo reacted	14.7 (200nM)	26.0 (200 nM)	14.7 (200 nM)	0
Unbound oligo	5.50	10.43	4.20	-
∴Bound oligo	9.20	15.57	10.50	-
% Bound	62.6%	59.9%	71.4%	-

Oligo bound resins were divided into two portions (~25 mg resin each) for poly (rA) binding analysis in duplicate. Poly (rA) Pharmacia #27-4110-01 (dissolved at 28.2 A_{260} units/ml in binding buffer) was used for binding. Five (5) A_{260} units were bound to duplicate 25 mg portions of each oligo bound resin per SOP QC 5543. Unbound "breakthrough" poly (rA) was quantitated by A_{260} absorbance and used to calculate bound. The fate of the bound poly (rA) was tracked through Low salt buffer wash and several elutions. As shown in Table 10 both the LNA and DNA coated beads function efficiently in the capture of poly (rA) target molecules. The LNA coated beads, however, bind the poly (rA) target much more tightly than the DNA coated beads as evidenced by the poly (rA) elution profiles of the different beads. We conclude that 1) an LNA T9 oligo is efficient in the capture of RNA molecules containing a strech of A residues and that 2) the captured RNA molecules are bound much more tightly to the LNA T9 oligo beads than to the control DNA T9 and DNA T16 oligo.

Table 1
Monomer Z

Oligo	Target	T_m No.	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/NaCl/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/TMAC
5'-d(GTGATATGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	1		28	42
	5'-d(GCATTTCAC)-3'	2		12	31
	5'-d(GCATGTCAC)-3'	3		19	23
	5'-d(GCATCTCAC)-3'	4		11	30
	5'-d(GCATAACAC)-3'	5		12	
	5'-d(GCATAGCAC)-3'	6		<10	
	5'-d(GCATACCAC)-3'	7		<10	
	5'-(GCAUAUCAC)-3'	8		28	
	5'-(GCAUCUCAC)-3'	9		10	
5'-d(GTGATATGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	10		44	56
	5'-d(GCATTTCAC)-3'	11		27	43
	5'-d(GCATGTCAC)-3'	12		30	43
	5'-d(GCATCTCAC)-3'	13		23	38
	5'-d(GCATAACAC)-3'	14		28	
	5'-d(GCATAGCAC)-3'	15		28	
	5'-d(GCATACCAC)-3'	15A		29	
	5'-(GCAUAUCAC)-3'	16		50	
	5'-(GCAUCUCAC)-3'	17		33	

Table 1 (cont.)

Oligo	Target	T_m No.	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/NaCl/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/TMAC
5'-d(GTGAGATGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	18		26	39
	5'-d(GCATTTCAC)-3'	19		33	44
	5'-d(GCATGTCAC)-3'	20		28	38
	5'-d(GCATCTCAC)-3'	21		49	57
	5'-d(GCATAACAC)-3'	22		<15	
	5'-d(GCATAGCAC)-3'	23		<15	
	5'-d(GCATACCAC)-3'	24		<15	
	5'-(GCAUAUCAC)-3'	24A		34	
	5'-(GCAUCUCAC)-3'	24B		59	
5'-d(GTGAUATGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	25		44	56
	5'-d(GCATTTCAC)-3'	26		25	44
	5'-d(GCATGTCAC)-3'	27		32	43
	5'-d(GCATCTCAC)-3'	28		24	37
	5'-d(GCATAACAC)-3'	29		27	
	5'-d(GCATAGCAC)-3'	30		28	
	5'-d(GCATACCAC)-3'	31		20	
5'-d(GTGAGATGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	32		17	34
	5'-d(GCATTTCAC)-3'	33		16	30
	5'-d(GCATGTCAC)-3'	34		15	28
	5'-d(GCATCTCAC)-3'	35		33	44
	5'-d(GCATAACAC)-3'	36		9.0	
	5'-d(GCATAGCAC)-3'	37		<5	
	5'-d(GCATACCAC)-3'	38		<5	
	5'-(GCAUCUCAC)-3'	38A		33	

Table 1 (cont.)

Oligo	Target	T_m No.	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/NaCl/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/TMAC
5'-d(GGTGGTTTGTTTG)-3'					
	5'-d(CAAACAAACCACA)-3'	39	31	47	55
	5'-(CAAACAAACCACA)-3'	39A	32	52	
5'-d(GGTGGTTTGTTTG)-3'					
	5'-d(CAAACAAACCACA)-3'	40	40	57	67
	5'-(CAAACAAACCACA)-3'	40A	50	70	
d(GGTGGTTTGTTTG)-3'					
	5'-d(CAAACAAACCACA)-3'	41	67	83	>90
	5'-(CAAACAAACCACA)-3'	41A	85	>93	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'	42		36	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'	43		32	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'	44		36	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'	45		32	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'	46		34	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'	47		40	

Table 1 (cont.)

Oligo	Target	T_m No.	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/NaCl/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/TMAC
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'	48		42	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'	49		52	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'	50		47	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'	51		53	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'	52		80	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'	53		70	
	5'-d(AAAACAAAA)-3'	54		63	
	5'-d(AAAAGAAAA)-3'	55		55	
	5'-d(AAAATAAAA)-3'	56		65	
5'-d(GTGAAATGC)-3'					
	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	57		26	
	5'-d(GCATTTCAC)-3'	58		45	
	5'-d(GCATGTCAC)-3'	59		23	
	5'-d(GCATCTCAC)-3'	60		25	
5'-d(GTGA^{Me}CATGC)-3'					
	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	61		<15	
5'-d(GTGA^{Me}CATGC)-3'					
	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	63		32	
	5'-d(GCATTTCAC)-3'	64		27	
5'-d(GCATGTCAC)-3'		65		53	
	5'-d(GCATCTCAC)-3'	66		32	

Table 1 (cont.)

Oligo	Target	T_m No.	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/NaCl/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/TMAC
5'-d(GTGACATGC)-3'					
	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	67		32	
	5'-d(GCATGTCAC)-3'	69		52	
5'-d(**GTGATATG^{Me}C**)-3'					
	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	71		64	
	5'-d(GCATGTCAC)-3'	73		52	
	5'-(GCAUAUCAC)-3'	75		74	
	5'-(GCAUCUCAC)-3'	76		60	
	5'-d(CACTATACG)-3'	77		40	
5'-d(GTGTTTTGC)-3'					
	5'-d(GCAAAACAC)-3'	78		52	

Table 2
Monomer V

Oligo	Target	T_m No.	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/NaCl/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/TMAC
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			32	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			27	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			31	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			28	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			30	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			23	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			23	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			31	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			23	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			16	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			<10	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			42	
	5'-(AAAAAAGAAAAAAA)-3'			37	
5'-d(GTGATATGC)-3'					
	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'			26	
	5'-(GCAUAUCAC)-3'			27	

Table 3
Monomer X

Oligo	Target	T_m No.	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/NaCl/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/TMAC
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			23	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			23	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			19	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			23	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			9	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			15	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			5	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			14	

Table 4
Monomer Y

Oligo	Target	T_m No.	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/NaCl/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/TMAC
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			36	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			37	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			35	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			37	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			35	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			36	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			32	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			33	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			36	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			36	
5'-d(TTTTTTTTTTTTTT)-3'					
	5'-d(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			58	
	5'-(AAAAAAAAAAAAAA)-3'			58	

Table 4 (cont.)
Monomer Y

Oligo	Target	T_m No.	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/NaCl/EDTA	T_m (°C) Na_2HPO_4/TMAC
5'-d(GTGATATGC)-3'					
	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'			35	
	5'-(GCAUAUCAC)-3'			35	

Table 5
Monomer Z

Oligo	Target	T_m No.	Y=A	Melting temperature (T_m/°C) Y=C	Y=T	Y=G
5'-r(GTGATATGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATYTCAC)-3'	1	55	34	38	37
5'-r(GUGAUAUGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATYTCAC)-3'	2	27	<10	<10	<10
5'-r(GTGATATGC)-3'	5'-r(GCAUYUCAC)-3'	3	63	45	-	-
5'-r(GUGAUAUGC)-3'	5'-r(GCAUYUCAC)-3'	4	38	22	-	-

Table 6
Monomer Z

Oligo	Target	T_m No.	Melting temperature (T_m/°C)
5'-d(GTGATATGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	1	28
5'-d(GTGATATGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	2	44
5'-d(GTGATATGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	3	40
5'-d(GTGATATGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	4	63
5'-r(GTGATATGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	5	74
5'-(GTGATATG^{Me}C)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	6	85

Table 7
Monomer Z (all-phosphoromonothioate oligonucleotides)

Oligo	Target	T_m No.	Melting temperature (T_m/°C)
5'-d($G^ST^SG^SA^ST^SA^ST^SG^SC$)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	1	21
5'-d($G^ST^SG^SA^ST^SA^ST^SG^SC$)-3'	5'-r(GCAUAUCAC)-3'	2	17
5'-d($G^ST^SG^SA^ST^SA^ST^SG^SC$)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	3	41
5'-d($G^ST^SG^SA^ST^SA^ST^SG^SC$)-3'	5'-r(GCAUAUCAC)-3'	4	47

Table 8
Monomer thio-Z (U^S)

Oligo	Target	T_m No.	Melting temperature (T_m/°C)
5'-d(GTGAU^{S}ATGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	1	34
5'-d(GTGAU^{S}ATGC)-3'	5'-(GCAUAUCAC)-3'	2	36
5'-d(GU^{S}GAU^{S}AU^{S}GC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	3	42
5'-d(GU^{S}GAU^{S}AU^{S}GC)-3'	5'-(GCAUAUCAC)-3'	4	52
5'-d(GTGTTTTGC)-3'	5'-(GCAAAACAC)-3'	5	27
5'-d(GU^{S}GU^{S}U^{S}U^{S}U^{S}GC)-3'	5'-d(GCAAAACAC)-3'	6	51

Table 9
Monomers amino-Z (T^{NH}) and methylamino-Z (T^{NMe})

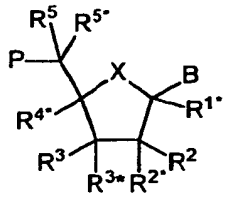
Oligo	Target	T_m No.	Melting temperature (T_m/°C)
5'-d(GTGAT^{NH}ATGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	1	33
5'-d(GTGAT^{NH}ATGC)-3'	5'-(GCAUAUCAC)-3'	2	34
5'-d(GT^{NH}GAT^{NH}AT^{NH}GC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	3	39
5'-d(GT^{NH}GAT^{NH}AT^{NH}GC)-3'	5'-(GCAUAUCAC)-3'	4	47
5'-d(GTGAT^{NMe}ATGC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	5	33
5'-d(GTGAT^{NMe}ATGC)-3'	5'-(GCAUAUCAC)-3'	6	36
5'-d(GT^{NMe}GAT^{NMe}AT^{NMe}GC)-3'	5'-d(GCATATCAC)-3'	7	39
5'-d(GT^{NMe}GAT^{NMe}AT^{NMe}GC)-3'	5'-(GCAUAUCAC)-3'	8	49
5'-d(GT^{NMe}GT^{NH}T^{NMe}T^{NH}T^{NMe}GC)-3'	5'-d(GCAAAACAC)-3'	9	47
5'-d(GT^{NMe}GT^{NH}T^{NMe}T^{NH}T^{NMe}GC)-3'	5'-(GCAAAACAC)-3'	10	63

Table 10

Steps	T9 oligo A_{260} units	T16 oligos A_{260} units	LNA T9 oligo A_{260} units	No oligo Control
poly (rA) added	5.0/5.0	5.0/5.0	5.0/5.0	5.0/5.0
poly (rA) breakthrough	1.75/1.61	1.84/1.78	1.83/1.82	5.09/5.14
∴ poly (rA) bound	3.25/3.39	3.16/3.22	3.17/3.18	0.0/0.0
% poly (rA) bound	65.0%/67.8%	63.2%/64.4%	63.4%/63.6%	0.0%/0.0%
Low Salt Wash/Elute	0.24/0.24	0.11/0.12	.053/.055	0.14/0.13
TE Elute 15 min RT	2.37/2.72	0.83/0.93	0.02/0.04	0.01/0.02
TE Elute O.N. RT	0.38/0.37	1.76/1.69	0.11/0.07	.003/.004
TE Elute 30 min 65°C	.047/.040	0.38/0.46	1.62/1.70	.005/.004
10 mM Tris pH 10 Elute	.002/.002	0.03/0.03	0.10/0.10	0.01/0.01
1 mM HCl pH 4.0 Elute	0.07/0.06	0.06/0.04	0.26/0.23	0.01/0.01
Ave. A_{260} Recovered	3.20	3.14	2.18	-
Ave. % A_{260} Recovered	96.4%	98.4%	68.7%	-

CLAIMS

1. An oligomer (hereinafter termed "LNA modified oligonucleotide") comprising at least one nucleoside analogue (hereinafter termed "LNA") of the general formula I



I

wherein X is selected from -O-, -S-, -N(R^{N*})-, -C(R^6R^{6*})-, -O-C(R^7R^{7*})-, -C(R^6R^{6*})-O-, -S-C(R^7R^{7*})-, -C(R^6R^{6*})-S-, -N(R^{N*})-C(R^7R^{7*})-, -C(R^6R^{6*})-N(R^{N*})-, and -C(R^6R^{6*})-C(R^7R^{7*})-;

B is selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, optionally substituted C_{1-4}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-4}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{1-4}-acyloxy, nucleobases, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands;

P designates the radical position for an internucleoside linkage to a succeeding monomer, or a 5'-terminal group, such internucleoside linkage or 5'-terminal group optionally including the substituent R^5;

one of the substituents R^2, R^{2*}, R^3, and R^{3*} is a group P* which designates an internucleoside linkage to a preceding monomer, or a 3'-terminal group;

one or two pairs of non-geminal substituents selected from the present substituents of R^{1*}, R^{4*}, R^5, R^{5*}, R^6, R^{6*}, R^7, R^{7*}, R^{N*}, and the ones of R^2, R^{2*}, R^3, and R^{3*} not designating P* each designates a biradical consisting of 1-8 groups/atoms selected from -C(R^aR^b)-, -C(R^a)=C(R^a)-, -C(R^a)=N-, -O-, -Si(R^a)$_2$-, -S-, -SO_2-, -N(R^a)-, and >C=Z,

wherein Z is selected from -O-, -S-, and -N(R^a)-, and R^a and R^b each is independently selected from hydrogen, optionally substituted C_{1-12}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{2-12}-alkenyl, optionally substituted C_{2-12}-alkynyl, hydroxy, C_{1-12}-alkoxy, C_{2-12}-alkenyloxy, carboxy, C_{1-12}-alkoxycarbonyl, C_{1-12}-alkylcarbonyl,

formyl, aryl, aryloxy-carbonyl, aryloxy, arylcarbonyl, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy-carbonyl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylcarbonyl, amino, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, carbamoyl, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)-amino-carbonyl, amino-C_{1-6}-alkyl-aminocarbonyl, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino-C_{1-6}-alkyl-aminocarbonyl, C_{1-6}-alkyl-carbonylamino, carbamido, C_{1-6}-alkanoyloxy, sulphono, C_{1-6}-alkylsulphonyloxy, nitro, azido, sulphanyl, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, halogen, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands, where aryl and heteroaryl may be optionally substituted, and where two geminal substituents R^a and R^b together may designate optionally substituted methylene (=CH_2), and wherein two non-geminal or geminal substitutents selected from R^a, R^b, and any of the substituents R^{1*}, R^2, R^{2*}, R^3, R^{3*}, R^{4*}, R^5, R^{5*}, R^6 and R^{6*}, R^7, and R^{7*} which are present and not involved in P, P* or the biradical(s) together may form an associated biradical selected from biradicals of the same kind as defined before; said pair(s) of non-geminal substituents thereby forming a mono- or bicyclic entity together with (i) the atoms to which said non-geminal substituents are bound and (ii) any intervening atoms; and

each of the substituents R^{1*}, R^2, R^{2*}, R^3, R^{4*}, R^5, R^{5*}, R^6 and R^{6*}, R^7, and R^{7*} which are present and not involved in P, P* or the biradical(s), is independently selected from hydrogen, optionally substituted C_{1-12}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{2-12}-alkenyl, optionally substituted C_{2-12}-alkynyl, hydroxy, C_{1-12}-alkoxy, C_{2-12}-alkenyloxy, carboxy, C_{1-12}-alkoxycarbonyl, C_{1-12}-alkylcarbonyl, formyl, aryl, aryloxy-carbonyl, aryloxy, arylcarbonyl, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy-carbonyl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylcarbonyl, amino, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, carbamoyl, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)-amino-carbonyl, amino-C_{1-6}-alkyl-aminocarbonyl, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino-C_{1-6}-alkyl-aminocarbonyl, C_{1-6}-alkyl-carbonylamino, carbamido, C_{1-6}-alkanoyloxy, sulphono, C_{1-6}-alkylsulphonyloxy, nitro, azido, sulphanyl, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, halogen, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands, where aryl and heteroaryl may be optionally substituted, and where two geminal substituents together may designate oxo, thioxo, imino, or optionally substituted methylene, or together may form a spiro biradical consisting of a 1-5 carbon atom(s) alkylene chain which is optionally interrupted and/or terminated by one or more heteroatoms/groups selected from -O-, -S-, and -(NR^N)- where R^N is

selected from hydrogen and C_{1-4}-alkyl, and where two adjacent (non-geminal) substituents may designate an additional bond resulting in a double bond; and R^{N*}, when present and not involved in a biradical, is selected from hydrogen and C_{1-4}-alkyl;

and basic salts and acid addition salts thereof;

with the proviso that,

(i) R^2 and R^3 do not together designate a biradical selected from -O-CH_2-CH_2- and -O-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2- when LNA is a bicyclic nucleoside analogue;

(ii) R^3 and R^5 do not together designate a biradical selected from -CH_2-CH_2-, -O-CH_2-, when LNA is a bicyclic nucleoside analogue;

(iii) R^3, R^5, and R^{5*} do not together designate a triradical -CH_2-CH(-)-CH_2- when LNA is a tricyclic nucleoside analogue;

(iv) R^{1*} and R^{6*} do not together designate a biradical -CH_2- when LNA is a bicyclic nucleoside analogue; and

(v) R^{4*} and R^{6*} do not together designate a biradical -CH_2- when LNA is a bicyclic nucleoside analogue.

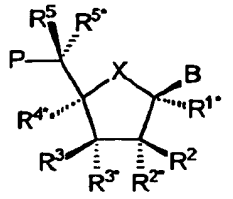
2. An oligomer according to claim 1, wherein the one or two pairs of non-geminal substituents, constituting one or two biradical(s), respectively, are selected from the present substituents of R^{1*}, R^{4*}, R^6, R^{6*}, R^7, R^{7*}, R^{N*}, and the ones of R^2, R^{2*}, R^3, and R^{3*} not designating P^*.

3. An oligomer according to claim 1 or 2, comprising 1-10000 LNA(s) of the general formula I and 0-10000 nucleosides selected from naturally occurring nucleosides and nucleoside analogues, with the proviso that the sum of the number of nucleosides and the number of LNA(s) is at least 2, preferably at least 3, such as in the range of 2-15000.

4. An oligomer according to claim 3, wherein at least one LNA comprises a nucleobase as the substituent B.

5. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-4, wherein one of the substituents R^3 and R^{3*} designates P^*.

6. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-5, wherein the LNA(s) has/have the following formula Ia



Ia

wherein P, P^*, B, X, R^{1*}, R^2, R^{2*}, R^3, R^{4*}, R^5, and R^{5*} are as defined in claims 1-5.

7. An oligomer according to claim 6, wherein R^{3*} designates P^*.

8. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-7, comprising one biradical constituted by a pair of (two) non-geminal substituents.

9. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-8, wherein X is selected from -(CR^6R^{6*})-, -O-, -S-, and -$N(R^{N*})$-, preferably -O-, -S-, and -$N(R^{N*})$-, in particular -O-.

10. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-9, wherein the biradical(s) constituted by pair(s) of non-geminal substituents is/are selected from -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-Y-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-Y-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-Y-, -Y-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-Y-, -Y-$(CR^*R^*)_r$-Y-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-, -Y-, -Y-Y-, wherein each Y is independently selected from -O-, -S-, -$Si(R^*)_2$-, -$N(R^*)$-, >C=O, -C(=O)-$N(R^*)$-, and -$N(R^*)$-C(=O)-, each R^* is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, azido, cyano, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, amino, mono- or di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands, and/or two adjacent (non-geminal) R^* may together designate a double bond, and each of r and s is 0-4 with the proviso that the sum r+s is 1-5.

11. An oligomer according to claim 10, wherein each biradical is independently selected from -Y-, -$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-Y-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -Y-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-Y-, wherein and each of r and s is 0-3 with the proviso that the sum r+s is 1-4.

12. An oligomer according to claim 11, wherein

(i) R^{2*} and R^{4*} together designate a biradical selected from -Y-, -$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s+1}$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-Y-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -Y-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-Y-;

(ii) R^2 and R^3 together designate a biradical selected from -Y-, -$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-Y-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -Y-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-Y-;

(iii) R^{2*} and R^3 together designate a biradical selected from -Y-, -$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-Y-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -Y-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-Y-;

(iv) R^3 and R^{4*} together designate a biradical selected from -Y-, -$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-Y-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -Y-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-Y-;

(v) R^3 and R^5 together designate a biradical selected from -Y'-, -$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s+1}$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-Y-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -Y-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-Y-;

(vi) R^{1*} and R^{4*} together designate a biradical selected from -Y'-, -$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s+1}$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-Y-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -Y-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-NR^*-; or

(vii) R^{1*} and R^{2*} together designate a biradical selected from -Y-, -$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-Y-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -Y-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-Y-;

wherein each of r and s is 0-3 with the proviso that the sum r+s is 1-4, and where Y' is selected from -NR^*-C(=O)- and -C(=O)-NR^*-.

13. An oligomer according to claim 12, wherein one of the following criteria applies for at least one LNA:

(i) R^{2*} and R^{4*} together designate a biradical selected from -O-, -S-, -$N(R^*)$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s+1}$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-O-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-S-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -O-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-O-, -S-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-O-, -O-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-S-, -$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-O-, -O-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-$N(R^*)$-, -S-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-S-, -$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-$N(R^*)$-, -$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-S-, and -S-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-$N(R^*)$-;

(ii) R^2 and R^3 together designate a biradical selected from -O-, -$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-O-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-S-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-;

(iii) R^{2*} and R^3 together designate a biradical selected from -O-, $-(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}-$, $-(CR^*R^*)_r-O-(CR^*R^*)_s-$, $-(CR^*R^*)_r-S-(CR^*R^*)_s-$, and $-(CR^*R^*)_r-N(R^*)-(CR^*R^*)_s-$;

(iv) R^3 and R^{4*} together designate a biradical selected from $-(CR^*R^*)_r-O-(CR^*R^*)_s-$, $-(CR^*R^*)_r-S-(CR^*R^*)_s-$, and $-(CR^*R^*)_r-N(R^*)-(CR^*R^*)_s-$;

(v) R^3 and R^5 together designate a biradical selected from $-(CR^*R^*)_r-O-(CR^*R^*)_s-$, $-(CR^*R^*)_r-S-(CR^*R^*)_s-$, and $-(CR^*R^*)_r-N(R^*)-(CR^*R^*)_s-$; or

(vi) R^{1*} and R^{4*} together designate a biradical selected from $-(CR^*R^*)_r-O-(CR^*R^*)_s-$, $-(CR^*R^*)_r-S-(CR^*R^*)_s-$, and $-(CR^*R^*)_r-N(R^*)-(CR^*R^*)_s-$;

(vii) R^{1*} and R^{2*} together designate a biradical selected from $-(CR^*R^*)_r-O-(CR^*R^*)_s-$, $-(CR^*R^*)_r-S-(CR^*R^*)_s-$, and $-(CR^*R^*)_r-N(R^*)-(CR^*R^*)_s-$;

wherein each of r and s is 0-3 with the proviso that the sum r+s is 1-4, and where X is selected from -O-, -S-, and $-N(R^H)-$ where R^H designates hydrogen or C_{1-4}-alkyl.

14. An oligomer according to claim 13, wherein R^{3*} designates P^*.

15. An oligomer according to claim 14, wherein R^{2*} and R^{4*} together designate a biradical.

16. An oligomer according to claim 15, wherein X is O, R^2 is selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, and optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, and R^{1*}, R^3, R^5, and R^{5*} designate hydrogen.

17. An oligomer according to claim 16, wherein the biradical is selected from –O-, $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-O-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$, $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-S-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$, and $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-N(R^N)-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$.

18. An oligomer according to claim 17, wherein the biradical is selected from $-O-CH_2-$, $-S-CH_2-$ and $-N(R^N)-CH_2-$.

19 An oligomer according to any of the claims 15-18, wherein B is selected from nucleobases.

20. An oligomer according to claim 19, wherein the oligomer comprises at least one LNA wherein B is selected from adenine and guanine and at least one LNA wherein B is selected from thymine, cytosine and urasil.

21. An oligomer according to claim 16, wherein the biradical is $-(CH_2)_{2-4}-$.

22. An oligomer according to claim 14, wherein R^2 and R^3 together designate a biradical.

23. An oligomer according to claim 22, wherein X is O, R^{2*} is selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, and optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, and R^{1*}, R^{4*}, R^5, and R^{5*} designate hydrogen.

24. An oligomer according to claim 23, wherein the biradical is $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-O-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$.

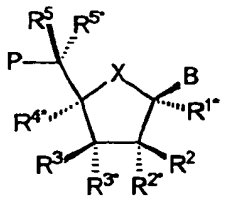
25. An oligomer according to claim 23, wherein the biradical is $-(CH_2)_{1-4}-$.

26. An oligomer according to any of the claims 14-25, wherein one R^* is selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands, and any remaining substituents R^* are hydrogen.

27. An oligomer according to any of the claims 14-26, wherein a group R^* in the biradical of at least one LNA is selected from DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands.

28. An oligomer according to any of the claims 14-27, wherein the LNA(s) has/have the general formula Ia.

29. An oligomer according to claim 1 of the general formula Ia



Ia

wherein X is -O-;

B is selected from nucleobases, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands;

P designates the radical position for an internucleoside linkage to a succeeding monomer, or a 5'-terminal group, such internucleoside linkage or 5'-terminal group optionally including the substituent R^5;

R^{3*} is a group P* which designates an internucleoside linkage to a preceding monomer, or a 3'-terminal group;

R^{2*} and R^{4*} together designate a biradical selected from -O-, -S-, -N(R^*)-, -(CR^*R^*)$_{r+s+1}$-, -(CR^*R^*)$_r$-O-(CR^*R^*)$_s$-, -(CR^*R^*)$_r$-S-(CR^*R^*)$_s$-, -(CR^*R^*)$_r$-N(R^*)-(CR^*R^*)$_s$-, -O-(CR^*R^*)$_{r+s}$-O-, -S-(CR^*R^*)$_{r+s}$-O-, -O-(CR^*R^*)$_{r+s}$-S-, -N(R^*)-(CR^*R^*)$_{r+s}$-O-, -O-(CR^*R^*)$_{r+s}$-N(R^*)-, -S-(CR^*R^*)$_{r+s}$-S-, -N(R^*)-(CR^*R^*)$_{r+s}$-N(R^*)-, -N(R^*)-(CR^*R^*)$_{r+s}$-S-, and -S-(CR^*R^*)$_{r+s}$-N(R^*)-; wherein each R^* is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, azido, cyano, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, amino, mono- or di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands, and/or two adjacent (non-geminal) R^* may together designate a double bond, and each of r and s is 0-3 with the proviso that the sum r+s is 1-4;each of the substituents R^{1*}, R^2, R^3, R^5, and R^{5*} is independently selected from hydrogen, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6}-alkoxy, C_{2-6}-alkenyloxy, carboxy, C_{1-6}-alkoxycarbonyl, C_{1-6}-alkylcarbonyl, formyl, amino, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, carbamoyl, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)-amino-carbonyl, C_{1-6}-alkyl-carbonylamino, carbamido, azido, C_{1-6}-alkanoyloxy, sulphono, sulphanyl, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups,

thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands, and halogen, where two geminal substituents together may designate oxo;

and basic salts and acid addition salts thereof.

30. An oligomer according to claim 29, wherein one R^* is selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands, and any remaining substituents R^* are hydrogen.

31. An oligomer according to any of the claims 29-30, wherein the biradical is selected from -O-, $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-O-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$, $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-S-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$, $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-N(R^N)-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$, and $-(CH_2)_{2-4}-$.

32. An oligomer according to claim 31, wherein the biradical is selected from $-O-CH_2-$, $-S-CH_2-$ and $-N(R^N)-CH_2-$.

33. An oligomer according to any of the claims 29-32, wherein B is selected from nucleobases.

34. An oligomer according to claim 33, wherein the oligomer comprises at least one LNA wherein B is selected from adenine and guanine and at least one LNA wherein B is selected from thymine, cytosine and urasil.

35. An oligomer according to any of the claims 29-34, wherein R^2 is selected from hydrogen, hydroxy and optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, and R^{1*}, R^3, R^5, and R^{5*} designate hydrogen.

36. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-35, wherein any internucleoside linkage of the LNA(s) is selected from linkages consisting of 2 to 4, preferably 3, groups/atoms selected from $-CH_2-$, -O-, -S-, $-NR^H-$, $>C=O$, $>C=NR^H$, $>C=S$, $-Si(R'')_2-$ -SO-, $-S(O)_2-$, $-P(O)_2-$, -P(O,S)-, $-P(S)_2-$, -PO(R'')-, $-PO(OCH_3)-$, and $-PO(NHR^H)-$,

where R^H is selected form hydrogen and C_{1-4}-alkyl, and R'' is selected from C_{1-6}-alkyl and phenyl.

37. An oligomer according to claim 36, wherein any internucleoside linkage of the LNA(s) is selected from -CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-, -CH_2-CO-CH_2-, -CH_2-CHOH-CH_2-, -O-CH_2-O-, -O-CH_2-CH_2-, -O-CH_2-CH=, -CH_2-CH_2-O-, -NR^H-CH_2-CH_2-, -CH_2-CH_2-NR^H-, -CH_2-NR^H-CH_2-, -O-CH_2-CH_2-NR^H-, -NR^H-CO-O-, -NR^H-CO-NR^H-, -NR^H-CS-NR^H-, -NR^H-C(=NR^H)-NR^H-, -NR^H-CO-CH_2-NR^H-, -O-CO-O-, -O-CO-CH_2-O-, -O-CH_2-CO-O-, -CH_2-CO-NR^H-, -O-CO-NR^H-, -NR^H-CO-CH_2-, -O-CH_2-CO-NR^H-, -O-CH_2-CH_2-NR^H-, -CH=N-O-, -CH_2-NR^H-O-, -CH_2-O-N=, -CH_2-O-NR^H-, -CO-NR^H-CH_2-, -CH_2-NR^H-O-, -CH_2-NR^H-CO-, -O-NR^H-CH_2-, -O-NR^H-, -O-CH_2-S-, -S-CH_2-O-, -CH_2-CH_2-S-, -O-CH_2-CH_2-S-, -S-CH_2-CH=, -S-CH_2-CH_2-, -S-CH_2-CH_2-O-, -S-CH_2-CH_2-S-, -CH_2-S-CH_2-, -CH_2-SO-CH_2-, -CH_2-SO_2-CH_2-, -O-SO-O-, -O-S(O)$_2$-O-, -O-S(O)$_2$-CH_2-, -O-S(O)$_2$-NR^H-, -NR^H-S(O)$_2$-CH_2-, -O-S(O)$_2$-CH_2-, -O-P(O)$_2$-O-, -O-P(O,S)-O-, -O-P(S)$_2$-O-, -S-P(O)$_2$-O-, -S-P(O,S)-O-, -S-P(S)$_2$-O-, -O-P(O)$_2$-S-, -O-P(O,S)-S-, -O-P(S)$_2$-S-, -S-P(O)$_2$-S-, -S-P(O,S)-S-, -S-P(S)$_2$-S-, -O-PO(R'')-O-, -O-PO(OCH_3)-O-, -O-PO(BH_3)-O-, -O-PO(NHR^N)-O-, -O-P(O)$_2$-NR^H-, -NR^H-P(O)$_2$-O-, -O-P(O,NR^H)-O-, and -O-Si(R'')$_2$-O-.

38. An oligomer according to claim 37, wherein any internucleoside linkage of the LNA(s) is selected from -CH_2-CO-NR^H-, -CH_2-NR^H-O-, -S-CH_2-O-, -O-P(O)$_2$-O-, -O-P(O,S)-O-, -O-P(S)$_2$-O-, -NR^H-P(O)$_2$-O-, -O-P(O,NR^H)-O-, -O-PO(R'')-O-, -O-PO(CH_3)-O-, and -O-PO(NHR^N)-O-, where R^H is selected form hydrogen and C_{1-4}-alkyl, and R'' is selected from C_{1-6}-alkyl and phenyl.

39. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-38, wherein each of the substituents R^{1*}, R^2, R^{2*}, R^3, R^{3*}, R^{4*}, R^5, R^{5*}, R^6, R^{6*}, R^7, and R^{7*} of the LNA(s), which are present and not involved in P, P* or the biradical(s), is independently selected from hydrogen, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6}-alkoxy, C_{2-6}-alkenyloxy, carboxy, C_{1-6}-alkoxycarbonyl, C_{1-6}-alkylcarbonyl, formyl, amino, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, carbamoyl, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)-amino-carbonyl, C_{1-6}-alkyl-carbonylamino, carbamido, azido, C_{1-6}-alkanoyloxy, sulphono, sulphanyl, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands, and

halogen, where two geminal substituents together may designate oxo, and where R^{N*}, when present and not involved in a biradical, is selected from hydrogen and C_{1-4}-alkyl.

40. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-39, wherein X is selected from -O-, -S-, and $-NR^{N*}-$, and each of the substituents R^{1*}, R^2, R^{2*}, R^3, R^{3*}, R^{4*}, R^5, R^{5*}, R^6, R^{6*}, R^7, and R^{7*} of the LNA(s), which are present and not involved in P, P^* or the biradical(s), designate hydrogen.

41. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-40, wherein P is a 5'-terminal group selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkylcarbonyloxy, optionally substituted aryloxy, monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, and -W-A', wherein W is selected from -O-, -S-, and $-N(R^H)-$ where R^H is selected from hydrogen and C_{1-6}-alkyl, and where A' is selected from DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands.

42. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-41, wherein P* is a 3'-terminal group selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkylcarbonyloxy, optionally substituted aryloxy, and -W-A', wherein W is selected from -O-, -S-, and $-N(R^H)-$ where R^H is selected from hydrogen and C_{1-6}-alkyl, and where A' is selected from DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands.

43. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-42, having the following formula V:

$$G\text{-}[Nu\text{-}L]_{n(0)}\text{-}\{[LNA\text{-}L]_{m(q)}\text{-}[Nu\text{-}L]_{n(q)}\}_q\text{-}G^* \qquad V$$

wherein

q is 1-50;

each of n(0), .., n(q) is independently 0-10000;

each of m(1), .., m(q) is independently 1-10000;

with the proviso that the sum of n(0), .., n(q) and m(1), .., m(q) is 2-15000;

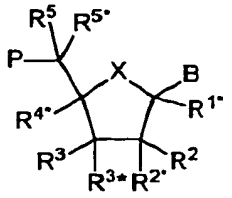
G designates a 5'-terminal group;

each Nu independently designates a nucleoside selected from naturally occurring nucleosides and nucleoside analogues;

each LNA independently designates a nucleoside analogue;

each L independently designates an internucleoside linkage between two groups selected from Nu and LNA, or L together with G* designates a 3'-terminal group; and

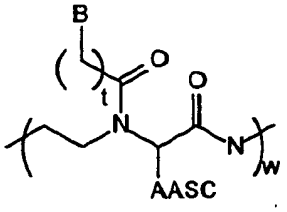
each LNA-L independently designates a nucleoside analogue of the general formula I:



I

wherein the substituents B, P, P*, R^{1*}, R^2, R^{2*}, R^3, R^{4*}, R^5, and R^{5*}, and X are as defined in claims 1-42.

44. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-42, further comprising a PNA mono- or oligomer segment of the formula



wherein B is a defined above for the formula I, AASC designates hydrogen or an amino acid side chain, t is 1-5, and w is 1-50.

45. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-44, which has an increased specificity towards complementary ssRNA or ssDNA compared to the native oligonucleotide.

46. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-44, which has an increased affinity towards complementary ssRNA or ssDNA compared to the native oligonucleotide.

47. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-44, which is capable of binding to a target sequence in a dsDNA or dsRNA molecule by way of "strand displacement" or by triple helix formation.

48. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-44, which is more resistant to nucleases than the native oligonucleotide.

49. An oligomer according to any of the claims 1-44, which has nucleic acid catalytic activity (LNA modified ribozymes).

50. An oligomer comprising at least one nucleoside analogue which imparts to the oligomer a T_m with a complementary DNA oligonucleotide which is at least 2.5 °C higher than that of the corresponding unmodified reference oligonucleotide which does not comprise any nucleoside analogue.

51. An oligomer according to claim 50, wherein the T_m is at least 2.5 x N °C higher, where N is the number of nucleoside analogues.

52. An oligomer comprising at least one nucleoside analogue which imparts to the oligomer a T_m with a complementary RNA oligonucleotide which is at least 4.0 °C higher than that of the corresponding unmodified reference oligonucleotide which does not comprise any nucleoside analogue.

53. An oligomer according to claim 52, wherein the T_m is at least 4.0 x N °C higher, where N is the number of nucleoside analogues.

54. An oligomer according to claim 50 or 52, wherein the oligomer is as defined in any of the claims 1-49, where the at least one nucleoside analogue has the formula I where B is a nucleobase.

55. An oligomer according to claim 50, wherein said oligomer, when hybridised with a partially complementary DNA oligonucleotide having one or more mismatches with said oligomer, exhibits a reduction in T_m, as a result of said mismatches, which is equal to or greater than the reduction which would be observed with the

corresponding unmodified reference oligonucleotide which does not comprise any nucleoside analogues.

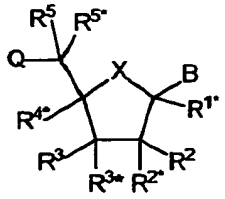
56. An oligomer according to claim 52, wherein said oligomer, when hybridised with a partially complementary RNA oligonucleotide having one or more mismatches with said oligomer, exhibits a reduction in T_m, as a result of said mismatches, which is equal to or greater than the reduction which would be observed with the corresponding unmodified reference oligonucleotide which does not comprise any nucleoside analogues.

57. An oligomer according to claim 50 or 52, which has substantially the same sensitivity of T_m to the ionic strength of the hybridisation buffer as that of the corresponding unmodified reference oligonucleotide.

58. An oligomer according to claim 50 or 52, which is at least 30% modified.

59. An oligomer according to claim 50 or 52, which has substantially higher 3'-exonucleolytic stability than the corresponding unmodified reference oligonucleotide.

60. A nucleoside analogue (hereinafter LNA) of the general formula II



II

wherein the substituent B is selected from nucleobases, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands;

X is selected from -O-, -S-, -N(R^{N*})-, and -C(R^6R^{6*})-;

one of the substituents R^2, R^{2*}, R^3, and R^{3*} is a group Q^*;

each of Q and Q* is independently selected from hydrogen, azido, halogen, cyano, nitro, hydroxy, Prot-O-, Act-O-, mercapto, Prot-S-, Act-S-, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, amino, Prot-$N(R^H)$-, Act-$N(R^H)$-, mono- or di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyloxy, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyloxy, monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, ligands, carboxy, sulphono, hydroxymethyl, Prot-O-CH_2-, Act-O-CH_2-, aminomethyl, Prot-$N(R^H)$-CH_2-, Act-$N(R^H)$-CH_2-, carboxymethyl, sulphonomethyl, where Prot is a protection group for -OH, -SH, and -$NH(R^H)$, respectively, Act is an activation group for -OH, -SH, and -$NH(R^H)$, respectively, and R^H is selected from hydrogen and C_{1-6}-alkyl;

(i) R^{2*} and R^{4*} together designate a biradical selected from -O-, -$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s+1}$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-O-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-S-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -O-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-O-, -S-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-O-, -O-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-S-, -$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-O-, -O-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-$N(R^*)$-, -S-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-S-, -$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-$N(R^*)$-, -$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-S-, and -S-$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-$N(R^*)$-;

(ii) R^2 and R^3 together designate a biradical selected from -O-, -$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-O-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-S-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-;

(iii) R^{2*} and R^3 together designate a biradical selected from -O-, -$(CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-O-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-S-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-;

(iv) R^3 and R^{4*} together designate a biradical selected from -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-O-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-S-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-;

(v) R^3 and R^5 together designate a biradical selected from -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-O-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-S-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-; or

(vi) R^{1*} and R^{4*} together designate a biradical selected from -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-O-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-S-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-;

(vii) R^{1*} and R^{2*} together designate a biradical selected from -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-O-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-S-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-, and -$(CR^*R^*)_r$-$N(R^*)$-$(CR^*R^*)_s$-;

wherein each R* is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, azido, cyano, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, amino, mono- or di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, DNA intercalators,

photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands, and/or two adjacent (non-geminal) R^* may together designate a double bond, and each of r and s is 0-3 with the proviso that the sum r+s is 1-4;

each of the substituents R^{1*}, R^2, R^{2*}, R^3, R^{4*}, R^5, and R^{5*}, which are not involved in Q, Q* or the biradical, is independently selected from hydrogen, optionally substituted C_{1-12}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{2-12}-alkenyl, optionally substituted C_{2-12}-alkynyl, hydroxy, C_{1-12}-alkoxy, C_{2-12}-alkenyloxy, carboxy, C_{1-12}-alkoxycarbonyl, C_{1-12}-alkylcarbonyl, formyl, aryl, aryloxy-carbonyl, aryloxy, arylcarbonyl, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy-carbonyl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylcarbonyl, amino, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, carbamoyl, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)-amino-carbonyl, amino-C_{1-6}-alkyl-aminocarbonyl, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino-C_{1-6}-alkyl-aminocarbonyl, C_{1-6}-alkyl-carbonylamino, carbamido, C_{1-6}-alkanoyloxy, sulphono, C_{1-6}-alkylsulphonyloxy, nitro, azido, sulphanyl, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, halogen, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands, where aryl and heteroaryl may be optionally substituted, and where two geminal substituents together may designate oxo, thioxo, imino, or optionally substituted methylene, or together may form a spiro biradical consisting of a 1-5 carbon atom(s) alkylene chain which is optionally interrupted and/or terminated by one or more heteroatoms/groups selected from -O-, -S-, and -(NR^N)- where R^N is selected from hydrogen and C_{1-4}-alkyl, and where two adjacent (non-geminal) substituents may designate an additional bond resulting in a double bond; and R^{N*}, when present and not involved in a biradical, is selected from hydrogen and C_{1-4}-alkyl;

and basic salts and acid addition salts thereof;

with the first proviso that,

(i) R^2 and R^3 do not together designate a biradical selected from -O-CH_2-CH_2- and -O-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-; and

(ii) R^3 and R^5 do not together designate a biradical selected from -CH_2-CH_2-, -O-CH_2-, and -O-Si(^{i}Pr)$_2$-O-Si(^{i}Pr)$_2$-O-;

and with the second proviso that any chemical group (including any nucleobase), which is reactive under the conditions prevailing in oligonucleotide synthesis, is optionally functional group protected.

61. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 60, wherein the group B is selected from nucleobases and functional group protected nucleobases.

62. A nucleoside analogue according to any of the claims 60-61, wherein X is selected from -O-, -S-, and -N(R^{N*})-.

63. A nucleoside analogue according to any of the claims 60-62, wherein each of the substituents R^{1*}, R^2, R^{2*}, R^3, R^{3*}, R^{4*}, R^5, and R^{5*}, which are present and not involved in Q, Q^* or the biradical, is independently selected from hydrogen, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6}-alkoxy, C_{2-6}-alkenyloxy, carboxy, C_{1-6}-alkoxycarbonyl, C_{1-6}-alkylcarbonyl, formyl, amino, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, carbamoyl, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)-amino-carbonyl, C_{1-6}-alkyl-carbonylamino, carbamido, azido, C_{1-6}-alkanoyloxy, sulphono, sulphanyl, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, ligands, and halogen, where two geminal substituents together may designate oxo, and where R^{N*}, when present and not involved in a biradical, is selected from hydrogen and C_{1-4}-alkyl, with the proviso that any hydroxy, amino, mono(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, sulfanyl, and carboxy is optionally protected.

64. A nucleotide analogue according to any of the claims 60-63, each of the substituents R^{1*}, R^2, R^{2*}, R^3, R^{3*}, R^{4*}, and R^5, R^{5*}, R^6, R^{6*}, which are present and not involved in Q^* or the biradical, designate hydrogen.

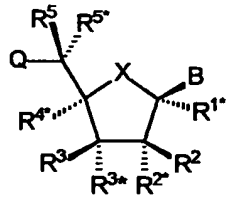
65. A nucleoside analogue according to any of the claims 60-64, wherein R^{3*} designates P^*.

66. A nucleoside analogue according to any of the claims 60-65, wherein Q is independently selected from hydrogen, azido, halogen, cyano, nitro, hydroxy, Prot-O-, mercapto, Prot-S-, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, amino, Prot-N(R^H)-, mono- or di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino,

optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyloxy, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyloxy, monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, ligands, carboxy, sulphono, hydroxymethyl, Prot-O-CH_2-, aminomethyl, Prot-N(R^H)-CH_2-, carboxymethyl, sulphonomethyl, where Prot is a protection group for -OH, -SH, and -NH(R^H), respectively, and R^H is selected from hydrogen and C_{1-6}-alkyl; and

Q^* is selected from hydrogen, azido, halogen, cyano, nitro, hydroxy, Act-O-, mercapto, Act-S-, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, amino, Act-N(R^H)-, mono- or di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyloxy, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyloxy, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, ligands, carboxy, sulphono, where Act is an activation group for -OH, -SH, and -NH(R^H), respectively, and R^H is selected from hydrogen and C_{1-6}-alkyl.

67. A nucleotide analogue according to any of the claims 60-66, having the general formula IIa



IIa

wherein the substituents Q, B, R^{1*}, R^2, R^{2*}, R^3, R^{3*}, R^{4*}, R^5, and R^{5*} are as defined in claims 60-66.

68. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 67, wherein R^{3*} designates P^*.

69. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 68, wherein R^{2*} and R^{4*} together designate a biradical.

70. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 69, wherein X is O, R^2 selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, and optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, and R^{1*}, R^3, R^5, and R^{5*} designate hydrogen.

71. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 70, wherein the biradical is selected from -O-, $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-O-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$, $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-S-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$, and $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-N(R^N)-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$.

72. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 71, wherein the biradical is selected from $-O-CH_2-$, $-S-CH_2-$ and $-N(R^N)-CH_2-$.

73. A nucleoside analogue according to any of the claims 69-72, wherein B is selected from nucleobases.

74. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 73, wherein the oligomer comprises at least one LNA wherein B is selected from adenine and guanine and at least one LNA wherein B is selected from thymine, cytosine and urasil.

75. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 70, wherein the biradical is $-(CH_2)_{2-4}-$, preferably $-(CH_2)_2-$.

76. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 68, wherein R^2 and R^3 together designate a biradical.

77. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 76, wherein X is O, R^{2*} is selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, and optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, and R^{1*}, R^{4*}, R^5, and R^{5*} designate hydrogen.

78. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 77, wherein the biradical is $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-O-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$.

79. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 77, wherein the biradical is $-(CH_2)_{1-4}-$.

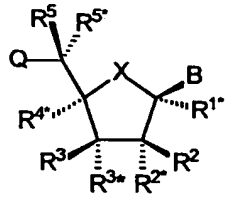
80. A nucleoside analogue according to any of the claims 68-79, wherein one R^* is selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally

substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands, and any remaining substituents R^* are hydrogen.

81. A nucleoside analogue according to any of the claims 68-80, wherein a group R^* in the biradical of at least one LNA is selected from DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands.

82. A nucleoside analogue according to any of the claims 68-81, wherein the LNA(s) has/have the general formula Ia.

83. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 60 of the general formula IIa



IIa

wherein X is -O-;

B is selected from nucleobases, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands;

R^{3*} is a group Q*;

each of Q and Q* is independently selected from hydrogen, azido, halogen, cyano, nitro, hydroxy, Prot-O-, Act-O-, mercapto, Prot-S-, Act-S-, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, amino, Prot-$N(R^H)$-, Act-$N(R^H)$-, mono- or di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyloxy, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyloxy, monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, ligands, carboxy, sulphono, hydroxymethyl, Prot-O-CH_2-, Act-O-CH_2-, aminomethyl, Prot-$N(R^H)$-CH_2-, Act-$N(R^H)$-CH_2-, carboxymethyl, sulphonomethyl, where

Prot is a protection group for -OH, -SH, and -NH(R^H), respectively, Act is an activation group for -OH, -SH, and -NH(R^H), respectively, and R^H is selected from hydrogen and C_{1-6}-alkyl;

R^{2*} and R^{4*} together designate a biradical selected from -O-, -S, -N(R^*)-, -($CR^*R^*)_{r+s+1}$-, -($CR^*R^*)_r$-O-($CR^*R^*)_s$-, -($CR^*R^*)_r$-S-($CR^*R^*)_s$-, -($CR^*R^*)_r$-N(R^*)-($CR^*R^*)_s$-, -O-($CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-O-, -S-($CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-O-, -O-($CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-S-, -N(R^*)-($CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-O-, -O-($CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-N(R^*)-, -S-($CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-S-, -N(R^*)-($CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-N(R^*)-, -N(R^*)-($CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-S-, and -S-($CR^*R^*)_{r+s}$-N(R^*)-; wherein each R^* is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, azido, cyano, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, amino, mono- or di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands, and/or two adjacent (non-geminal) R^* may together designate a double bond, and each of r and s is 0-3 with the proviso that the sum r+s is 1-4;

each of the substituents R^{1*}, R^2, R^3, R^5, and R^{5*} is independently selected from hydrogen, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6}-alkoxy, C_{2-6}-alkenyloxy, carboxy, C_{1-6}-alkoxycarbonyl, C_{1-6}-alkylcarbonyl, formyl, amino, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, carbamoyl, mono- and di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)-amino-carbonyl, C_{1-6}-alkyl-carbonylamino, carbamido, azido, C_{1-6}-alkanoyloxy, sulphono, sulphanyl, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups, chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands, and halogen, where two geminal substituents together may designate oxo;

and basic salts and acid addition salts thereof;

and with the proviso that any chemical group (including any nucleobase), which is reactive under the conditions prevailing in oligonucleotide synthesis, is optionally functional group protected.

84. A nucleotide analogue according to claim 83, wherein one R^* is selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, DNA intercalators, photochemically active groups, thermochemically active groups,

chelating groups, reporter groups, and ligands, and any remaining substituents R^* are hydrogen.

85. A nucleotide analogue according to any of the claims 83-84, wherein the biradical is selected from -O-, $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-O-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$, $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-S-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$, $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-N(R^N)-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$, and $-(CH_2)_{2-4}-$.

86. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 85, wherein the biradical is selected from $-O-CH_2-$, $-S-CH_2-$ and $-N(R^N)-CH_2-$.

87. A nucleoside analogue according to any of the claims 83-86, wherein B is selected from nucleobases.

88. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 87, wherein the oligomer comprises at least one LNA wherein B is selected from adenine and guanine and at least one LNA wherein B is selected from thymine, cytosine and urasil.

89. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 83, wherein B designates a nucleobase, X is -O-, R^{2*} and R^{4*} together designate a biradical selected from $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-O-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$, $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-S-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$, and $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-N(R^N)-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$ where R^N is selected from hydrogen and C_{1-4}-alkyl, Q designates Prot-O-, R^{3*} is Q^* which designates Act-OH, and R^{1*}, R^2, R^3, R^5, and R^{5*} each designate hydrogen, wherein Act and Prot are as defined in claim 58.

90. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 83, wherein B designates a nucleobase, X is -O-, R^{2*} and R^{4*} together designate a biradical selected from $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-O-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$, $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-S-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$, and $-(CH_2)_{0-1}-N(R^N)-(CH_2)_{1-3}-$ where R^N is selected from hydrogen and C_{1-4}-alkyl, Q is selected from hydroxy, mercapto, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, amino, mono- or di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyloxy, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyloxy, monophosphate, diphosphate, and triphosphate, R^{3*} is Q^* which is selected from hydrogen, azido, halogen, cyano, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, amino, mono- or di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyloxy, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyl, and

optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyloxy, R^3 is selected from hydrogen, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyl, and optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyl, and R^{1*}, R^2, R^5, and R^{5*} each designate hydrogen.

91. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 83, wherein B designates a nucleobase, X is -O-, R^2 and R^3 together designate a biradical selected from $-(CH_2)_{0-1}$-O-CH=CH-, $-(CH_2)_{0-1}$-S-CH=CH-, and $-(CH_2)_{0-1}$-N(R^N)-CH=CH- where R^N is selected from hydrogen and C_{1-4}-alkyl, Q is selected from hydroxy, mercapto, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, amino, mono- or di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyloxy, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyloxy, monophosphate, diphosphate, and triphosphate, R^{3*} is Q* which is selected from hydrogen, azido, halogen, cyano, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, C_{1-6}-alkylthio, amino, mono- or di(C_{1-6}-alkyl)amino, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkoxy, optionally substituted C_{1-6}-alkyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyl, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkenyloxy, optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyl, and optionally substituted C_{2-6}-alkynyloxy, and R^{1*}, R^{2*}, R^{4*}, R^5, and R^{5*} each designate hydrogen.

92. A nucleoside analogue according to claim 60, which is selected from (*1R,3R,4R,7S*)-7-(2-cyanoethoxy(diisopropylamino)phosphinoxy)-1-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-3-(thymin-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane, (*1R,3R,4R,7S*)-7-hydroxy-1-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-3-(thymin-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane-7-*O*-(2-chlorophenylphosphate), and (*1R,3R,4R,7S*)-7-hydroxy-1-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-3-(thymin-1-yl)-2,5-dioxabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane-7-*O*-(*H*-phosphonate) and the 3-(cytosin-1-yl), 3-(urasil-1-yl), 3-(adenin-1-yl) and 3-(guanin-1-yl) analogues thereof

93. The use of an LNA as defined in any of the claims 60-92 for the preparation of an LNA modified oligonucleotide (an oligomer) according to any of the claims 1-59.

94. The use according to claim 93, wherein the LNA modified oligonucleotide comprises normal nucleosides, such as ribonucleosides and/or dioxyribonucleosides, as well as modified nucleosides different from those defined in claim 60.

95. The use according to claim 93, wherein the incorporation of LNA modulates the ability of the oligonucleotide to act as a substrate for nucleic acid active enzymes.

96. The use of an LNA as defined in any of the claims 60-92 for the preparation of a conjugate of an LNA modified oligonucleotide and a compound selected from proteins, amplicons, enzymes, polysaccharides, antibodies, haptens, peptides, and PNA.

97. A conjugate of an LNA modified oligonucleotide (an oligomer) as defined in any of the claims 1-59 and a compound selected from proteins, amplicons, enzymes, polysaccharides, antibodies, haptens, peptides, and PNA.

98. The use of an LNA as defined in any of the claims 60-92 as a substrate for enzymes active on nucleic acids.

99. The use according to claim 98, wherein the substituent Q in the formula I in claim 60 designates a triphosphate,

100. The use according to claim 98, wherein the LNA is used as a substrate for DNA and RNA polymerases.

101. The use of an LNA as defined in any of the claims 60-92 as a therapeutic agent.

102. The use of an LNA as defined in any of the claims 60-92 for diagnostic purposes.

103. A solid support material having immobilised thereto an optionally nucleobase protected and optionally 5'-OH protected LNA.

104. The use of one or more LNA as defined in any of the claims 60-92 in the construction of solid surface onto which LNA modified oligonucleotides of different sequences are attached .

105. The use according to claim 113, wherein the LNA modified oligonucleotides are attached in a predetermined pattern.

106. The use according to claim 113, wherein the LNAs are used to equalise the T_m of the corresponding unmodified reference oligonucleotides.

107. The use according to claim 113, wherein the LNA modified oligonucleotides have an increased affinity toward complementary ssDNA or ssRNA compared to native oligonucleotide.

108. The use according to claim 113, wherein the LNA modified oligonucleotides have an increased specificity toward complementary ssDNA or ssRNA compared to native oligonucleotide.

109. The use of LNA modified oligomers (ribozymes) as defined in any of the claims 1-59 in the sequence specific cleavage of target nucleic acids.

110. The use of an LNA modified oligonucleotide (an oligomer) as defined in any of the claims 1-59 in therapy, e.g. as an antisense, antigene or gene activating therapeutic.

111. The use according to claim 110, wherein the LNA modified oligonucleotide recruits RNAseH.

112. The use of complexes of more than one LNA modified oligonucleotide (an oligomer) as defined in any of the claims 1-59 in therapy, e.g. as an antisense, antigene or gene activating therapeutic.

113. The use of an LNA modified oligonucleotide (an oligomer) as defined in any of the claims 1-59 as an aptamer in therapeutic applications.

114. The use according to claim 119 , wherein the LNA modified oligonucleotide comprises at least one internucleoside linkage not being a phosphate diester linkage.

115. The use of an LNA modified oligonucleotide (an oligomer) as defined in any of the claims 1-59 in diagnostics, e.g. for the isolation, purification, amplification, detection, identification, quantification, or capture of natural or synthetic nucleic acids.

116. The use according to claim 115, wherein the oligonucleotide comprises a photochemically active group, a thermochemically active group, a chelating group, a reporter group, or a ligand that facilitates the direct of indirect detection of the oligonucleotide or the immobilisation of the oligonucleotide onto a solid support.

117. The use according to claim 116, wherein the photochemically active group, the thermochemically active group, the chelating group, the reporter group, or the ligand includes a spacer (K), said spacer comprising a chemically cleavable group.

118. The use according to claim 116, wherein the photochemically active group, the thermochemically active group, the chelating group, the reporter group, or the ligand is attached via the biradical (i.e. as R^*) of at least one of the LNA(s) of the oligonucleotide.

119. The use according to claim 115 for capture and detection of naturally occurring or synthetic double stranded or single stranded nucleic acids such as RNA or DNA.

120. The use according to claim 115 for purification of naturally occurring double stranded or single stranded nucleic acids such as RNA or DNA.

121. The use according to claim 115 as a probe in in-situ hybridisation, in Southern hydridisation, Dot blot hybridisation, reverse Dot blot hybridisation, or in Northern hybridisation.

122. The use according to claim 115 in the construction of an affinity pair.

123. The use according to claim 115 as a primer in a nucleic acid sequencing reaction or primer extension reactions.

124. The use according to claim 115 as a primer in a nucleic acid amplification reaction.

125. The use according to claim 124, wherein the primer is so adapted that the amplification reaction is an essentially linear reaction.

126. The use according to claim 124, wherein the primer is so adapted that the amplification reaction is an essentially exponential reaction.

127. The use according to any of the claims 124-126, wherein the nucleic acid amplification reaction results in a double stranded DNA product comprising at least one single stranded end.

128. The use of an LNA modified oligonucleotide (an oligomer) as defined in any of the claims 1-59 as an aptamer in molecular diagnostics.

129. The use of an LNA modified oligonucleotide (an oligomer) as defined in any of the claims 1-59 as an aptamer in RNA mediated catalytic processes.

130. The use of an LNA modified oligonucleotide (an oligomer) as defined in any of the claims 1-59 as an aptamer in specific binding of antibiotics, drugs, amino acids, peptides, structural proteins, protein receptors, protein enzymes, saccharides, polysaccharides, biological cofactors, nucleic acids, or triphosphates.

131. The use of an LNA modified oligonucleotide (an oligomer) as defined in any of the claims 1-59 as an aptamer in the separation of enantiomers from racemic mixtures by stereospecific binding.

132. The use of an LNA modified oligonucleotide (an oligomer) as defined in any of the claims 1-59 for the labelling of cells.

133. The use according to claim 132, wherein the label allows the cells to be separated from unlabelled cells.

134. The use of an LNA modified oligonucleotide (an oligomer) as defined in any of the claims 1-59 to hybridise to non-protein coding cellular RNAs, such as tRNA, rRNA, snRNA and scRNA, *in vivo* or *in-vitro*.

135. The use of an LNA modified oligonucleotide (an oligomer) as defined in any of the claims 1-59 in the construction of an oligonucleotide containing a fluorophor and a quencher, positioned in such a way that the hybridised state of the oligonucleotide can be distinguished from the unbound state of the oligonucleotide by an increase in the fluorescent signal from the probe.

136. The use of an LNA modified oligonucleotide (an oligomer) as defined in any of the claims 1-59 in the construction of Taqman probes or Molecular Beacons.

137. A kit for the isolation, purification, amplification, detection, identification, quantification, or capture of natural or synthetic nucleic acids, the kit comprising a reaction body and one or more LNA modified oligonucleotides (oligomer) as defined in any of the claims 1-59.

138. A kit according to claim 137, wherein the LNA modified oligonucleotides are immobilised onto said reactions body.

139. A kit for the isolation, purification, amplification, detection, identification, quantification, or capture of natural or synthetic nucleic acids, the kit comprising a reaction body and one or more LNAs as defined in any of the claims 60-92.

140. A kit according to claim 139, wherein the LNAs are immobilised onto said reactions body.

1/44

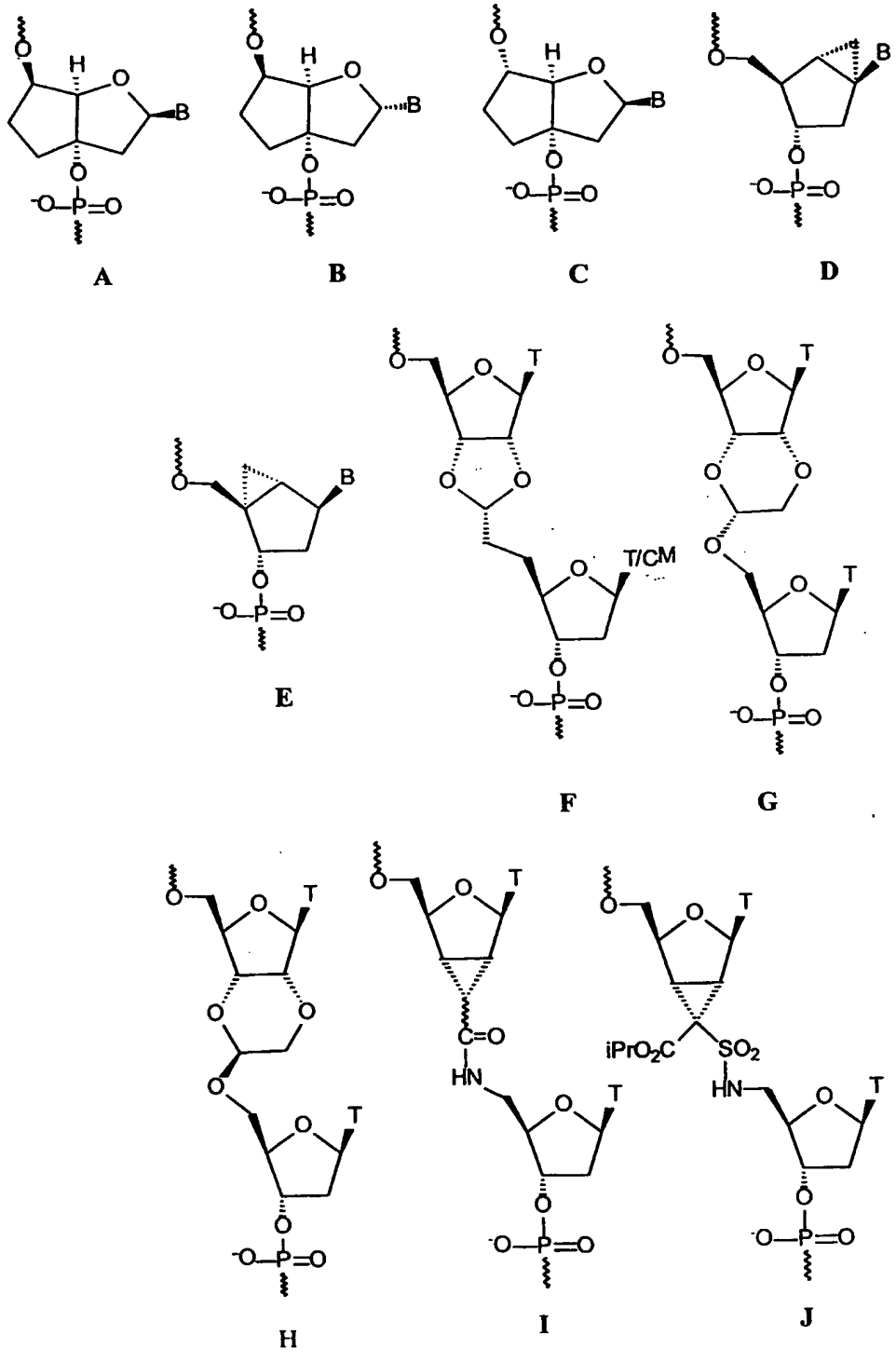


Fig. 1 A

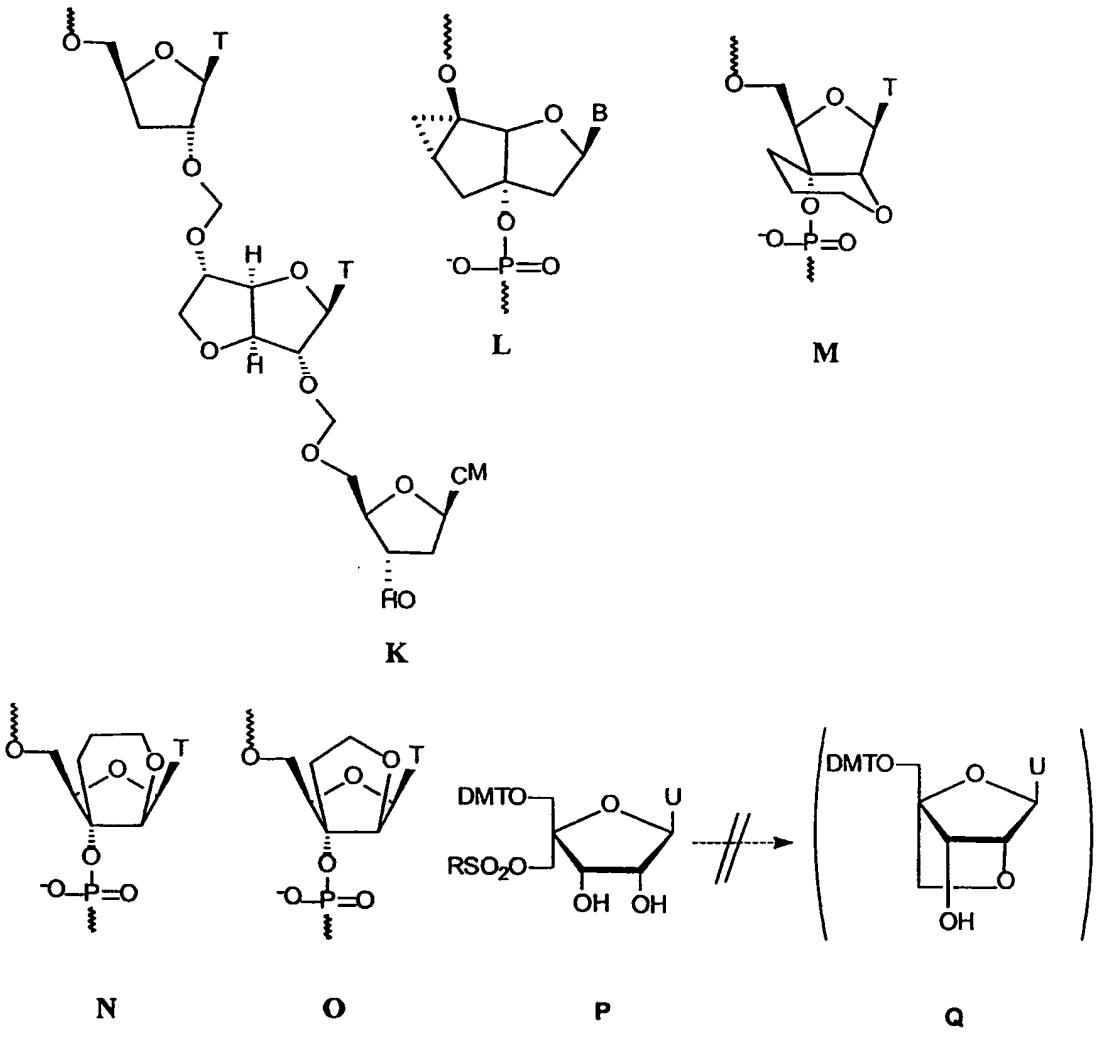
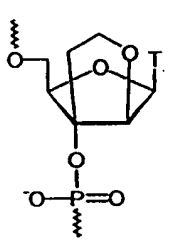
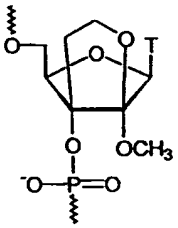


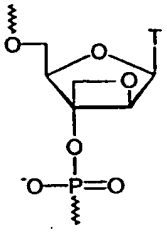
Fig. 1B



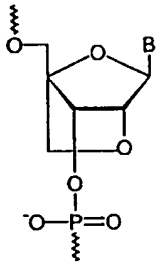
V



X



Y



^{Z}T: B = thymin-1-yl
^{Z}U: B = uracil-1-yl
^{Z}G: B = guanin-9-yl
^{Z}C: B = cytosin-1-yl
^{Z}A: B = adenin-9-yl
^{Z}MeC: B = 5-methylcytosin-1-yl

Fig. 2

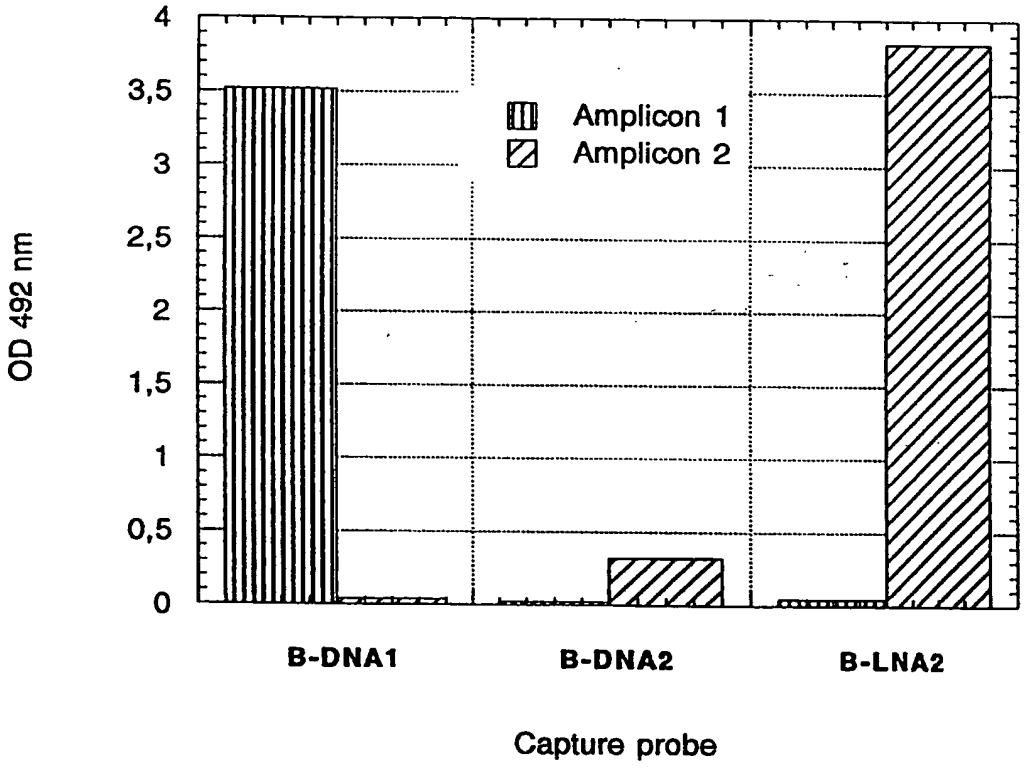

4
3,5
3
2,5
2
1,5
1
0,5
0
OD 492 nm
Amplicon 1
Amplicon 2
B-DNA1
B-DNA2
B-LNA2
Capture probe

Fig. 3

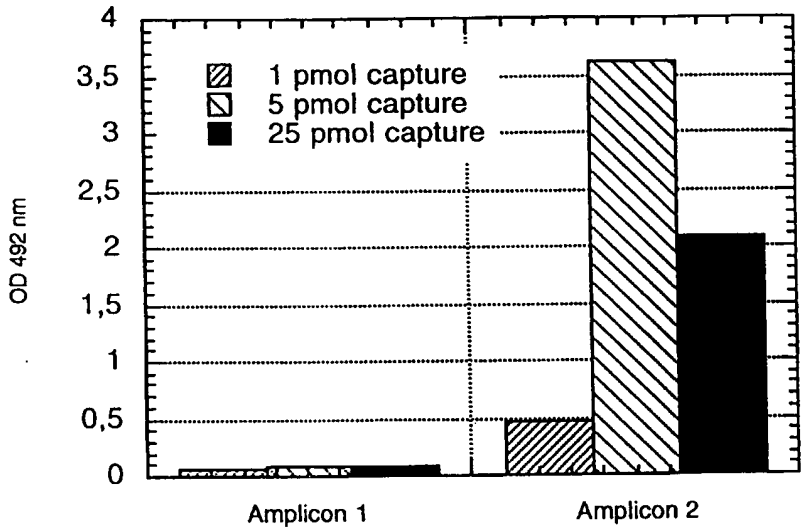

4
3,5
3
2,5
2
1,5
1
0,5
0
OD 492 nm
1 pmol capture
5 pmol capture
25 pmol capture
Amplicon 1
Amplicon 2

Fig. 4 A

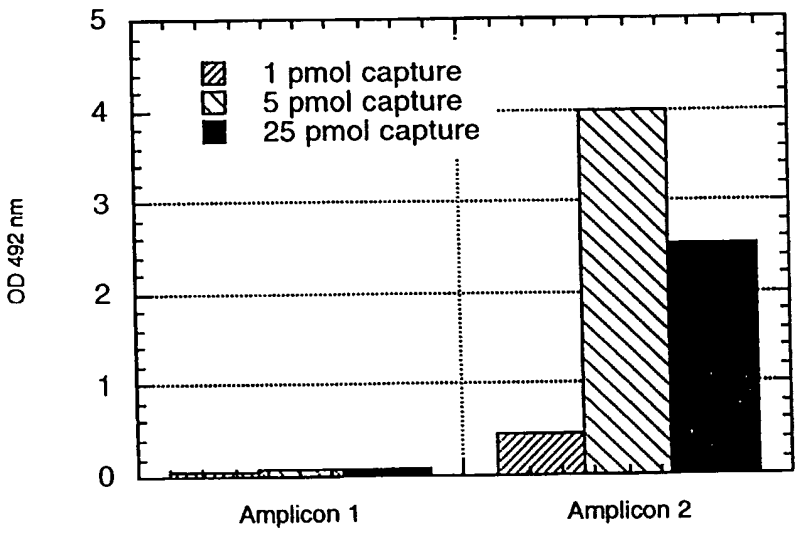

5
4
3
2
1
0
OD 492 nm
1 pmol capture
5 pmol capture
25 pmol capture
Amplicon 1
Amplicon 2

Fig. 4 B


amplicon1
amplicon2
1
0,9
0,8
0,7
0,6
0,5
0,4
0,3
0,2
0,1
0
B-DNA2
B-DNA2
B-LNA2
B-LNA2
No probe
No probe

Fig. 5

123456

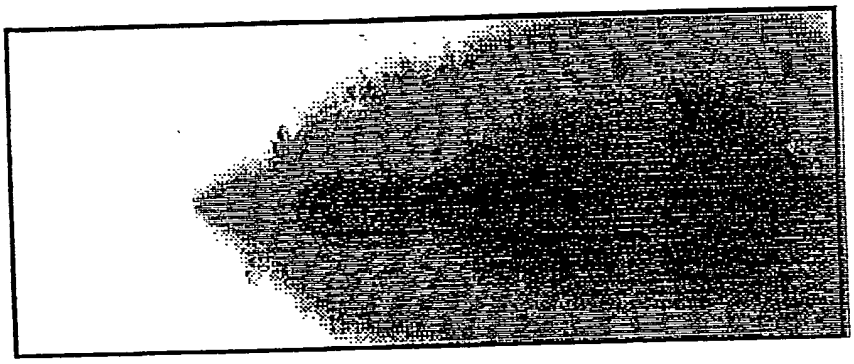


Fig. 6

Fig. 7

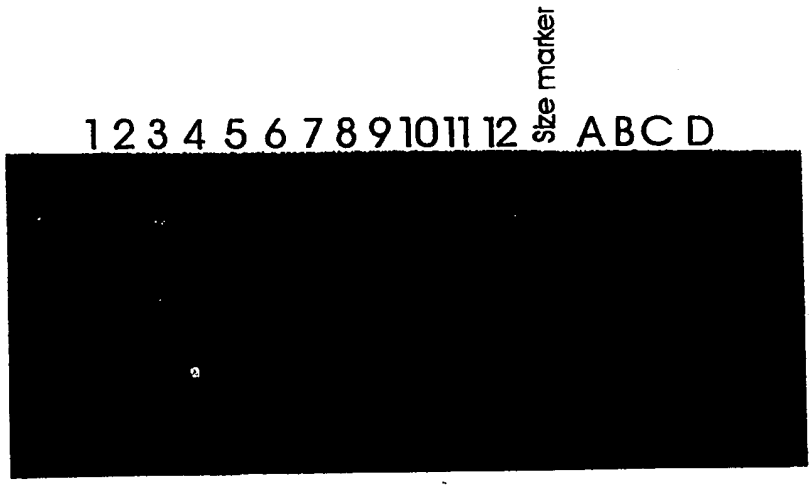


Fig. 8

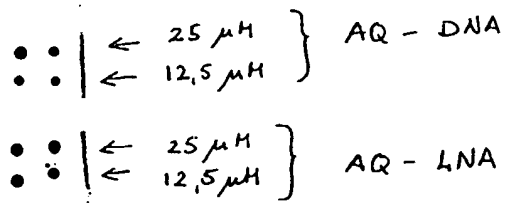


Fig. 9

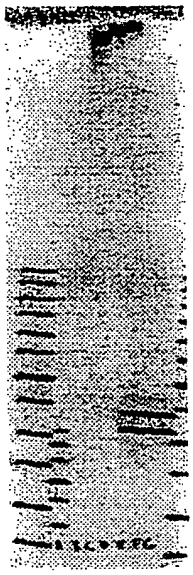


Fig. 10

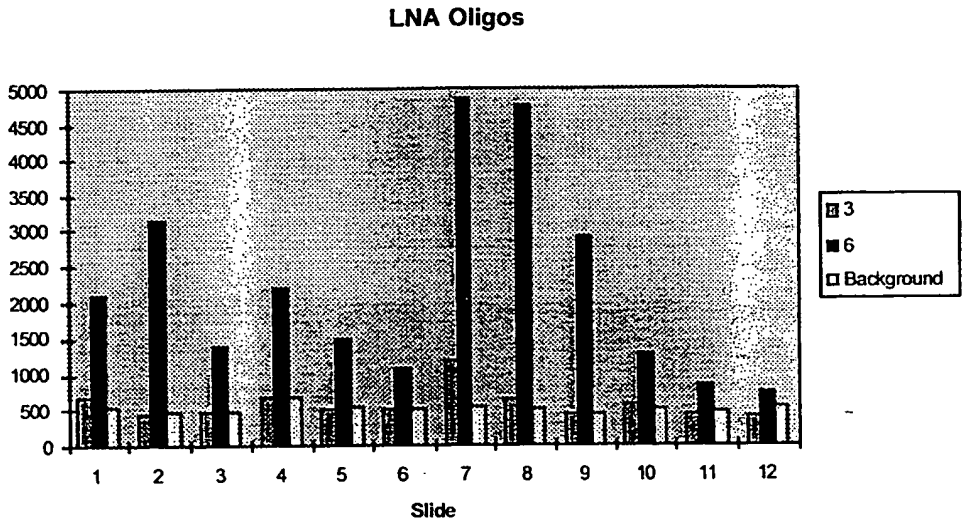

LNA Oligos
5000
4500
4000
3500
3000
2500
2000
1500
1000
500
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
Slide
3
6
Background

Fig. 11

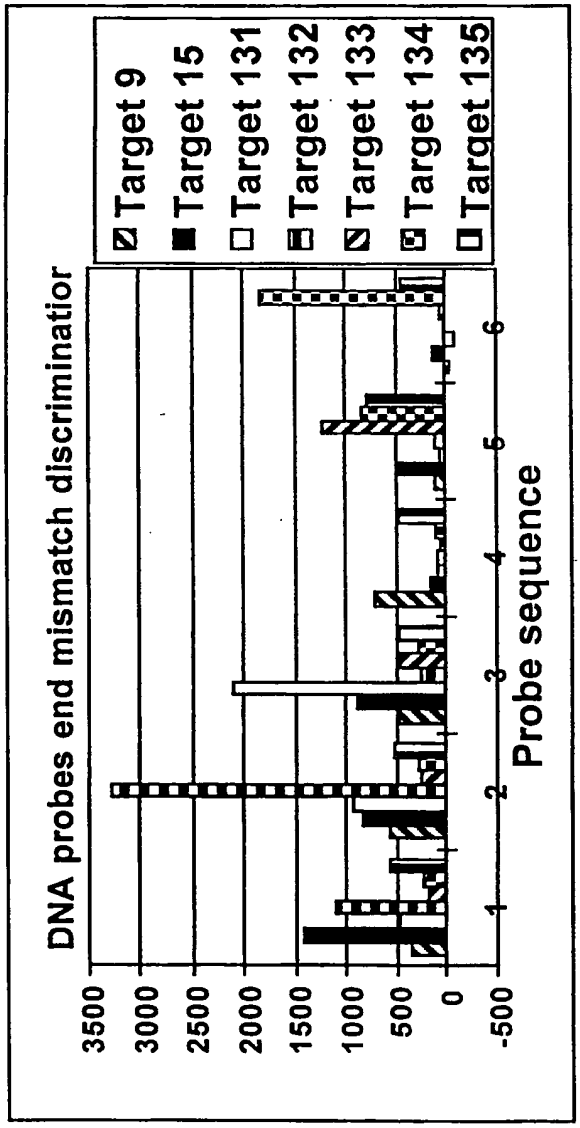

DNA probes end mismatch discriminatior
Target 9
Target 15
Target 131
Target 132
Target 133
Target 134
Target 135
3500
3000
2500
2000
1500
1000
500
0
-500
1
2
3
4
5
6
Probe sequence

Fig. 12

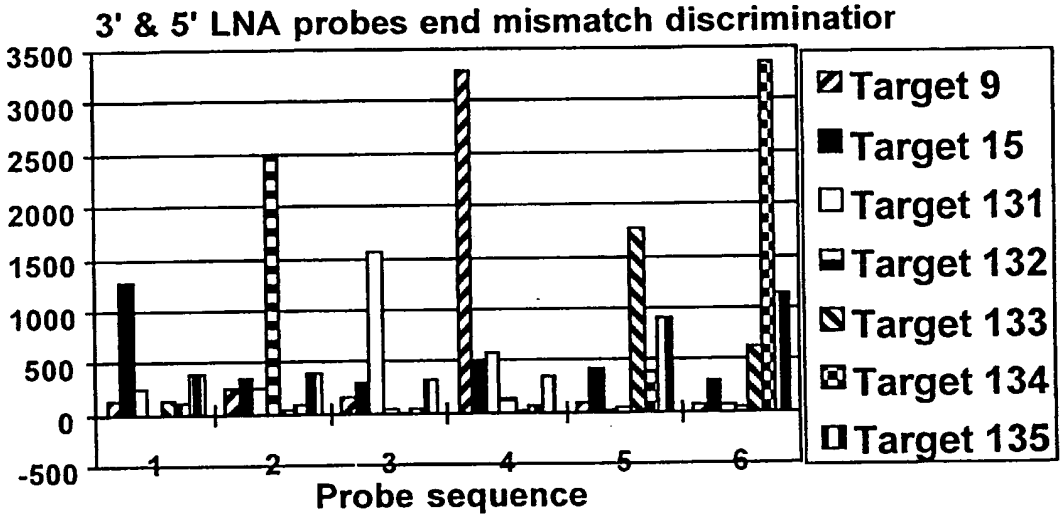

3' & 5' LNA probes end mismatch discriminatior
3500
3000
2500
2000
1500
1000
500
0
-500
1
2
3
4
5
6
Probe sequence
Target 9
Target 15
Target 131
Target 132
Target 133
Target 134
Target 135

Fig. 13

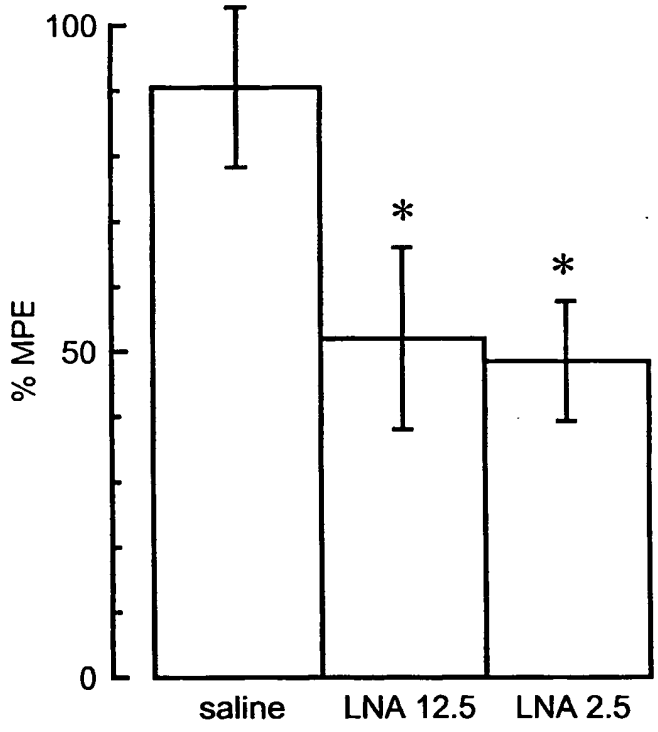


Fig. 14

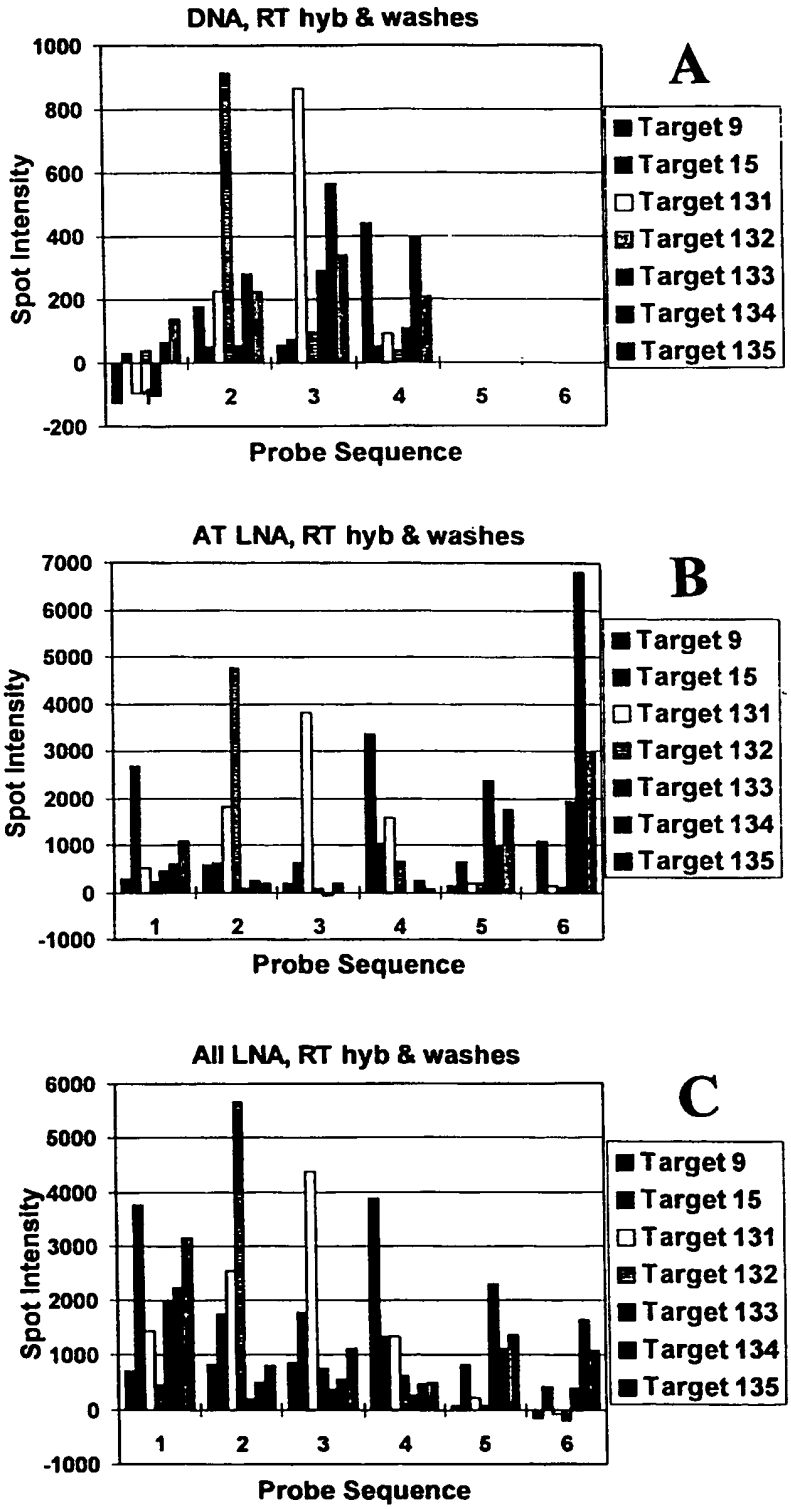

DNA, RT hyb & washes
A
Spot Intensity
1000
800
600
400
200
0
-200
2
3
4
5
6
Probe Sequence
Target 9
Target 15
Target 131
Target 132
Target 133
Target 134
Target 135
AT LNA, RT hyb & washes
B
Spot Intensity
7000
6000
5000
4000
3000
2000
1000
0
-1000
1
2
3
4
5
6
Probe Sequence
Target 9
Target 15
Target 131
Target 132
Target 133
Target 134
Target 135
All LNA, RT hyb & washes
C
Spot Intensity
6000
5000
4000
3000
2000
1000
0
-1000
1
2
3
4
5
6
Probe Sequence
Target 9
Target 15
Target 131
Target 132
Target 133
Target 134
Target 135

Fig. 15

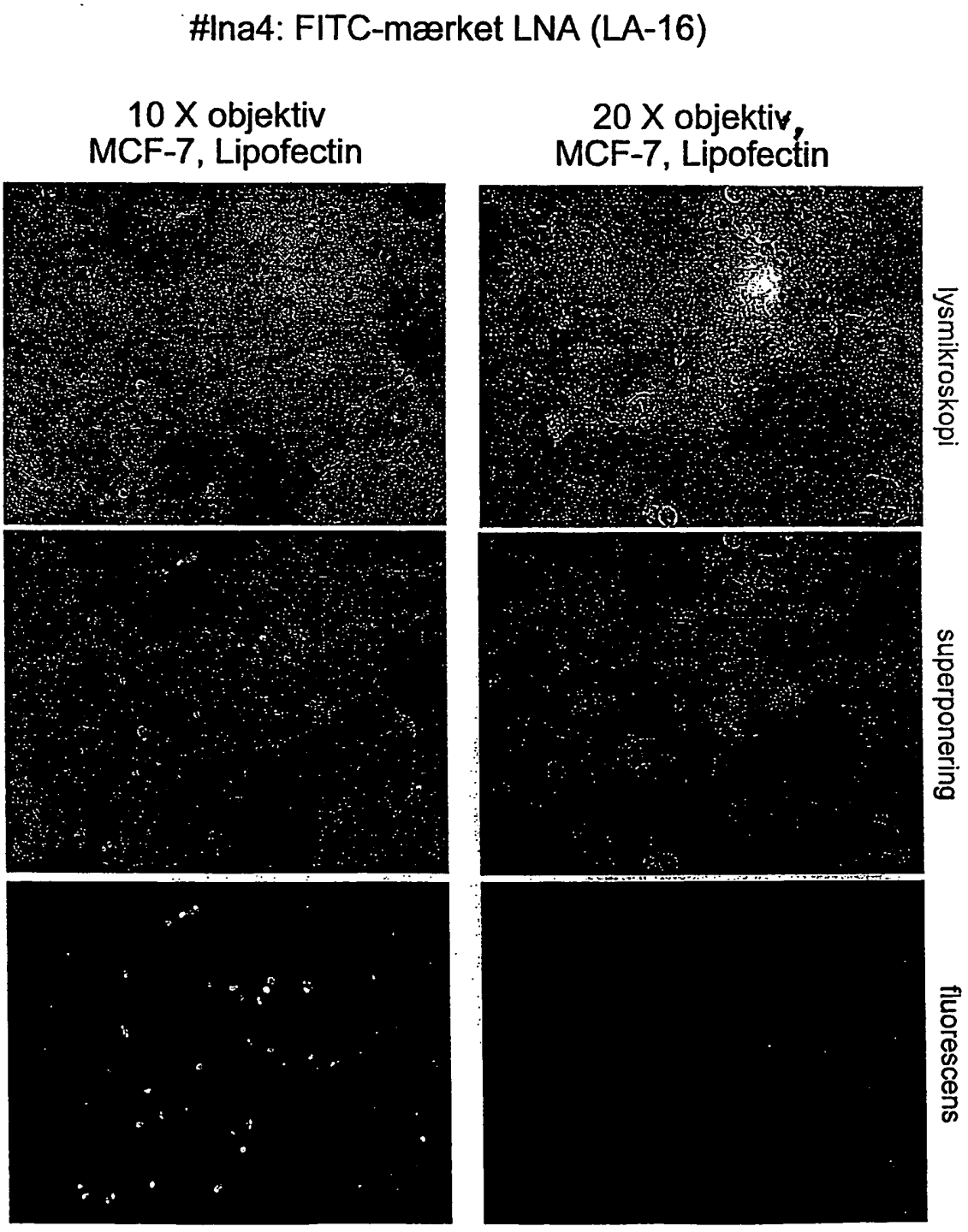

#lna4: FITC-mærket LNA (LA-16)
10 X objektiv
MCF-7, Lipofectin
20 X objektiv,
MCF-7, Lipofectin
lysmikroskopi
superponering
fluorescens

Fig. 16

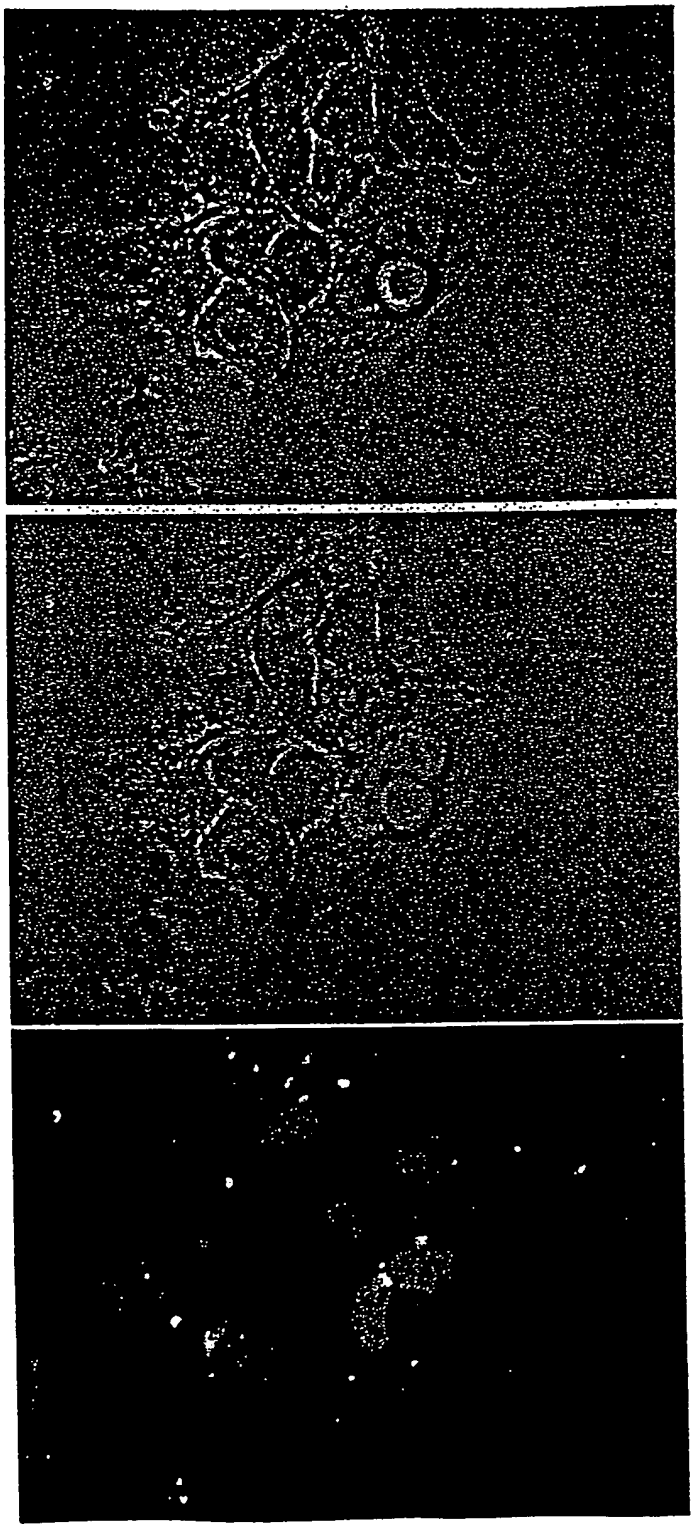


Fig. 17

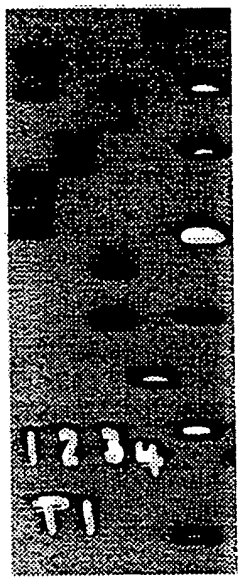


Fig. 18

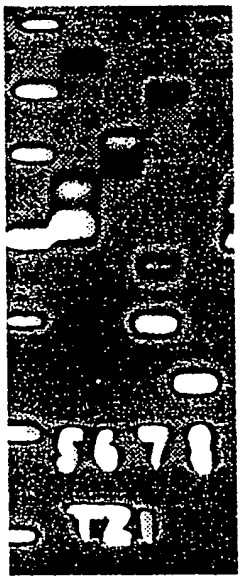


Fig. 19

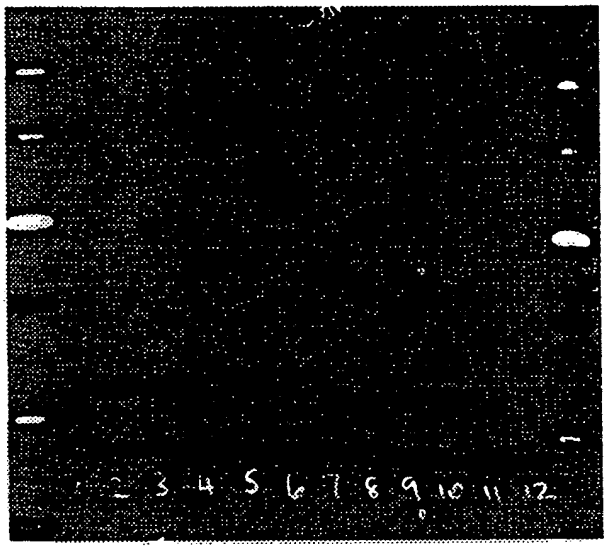


Fig. 20

Fig. 21

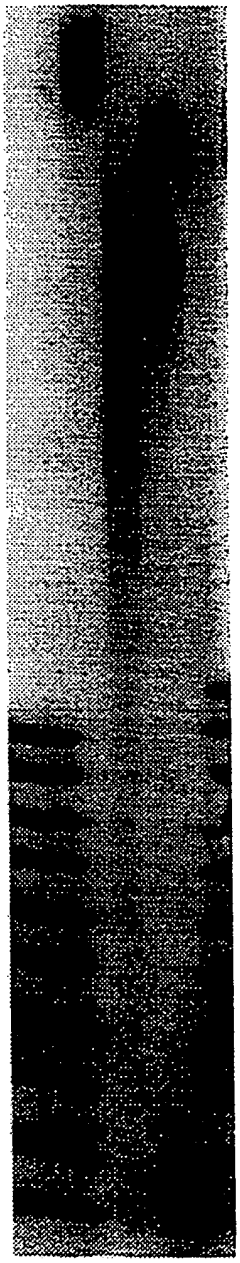


Fig. 22

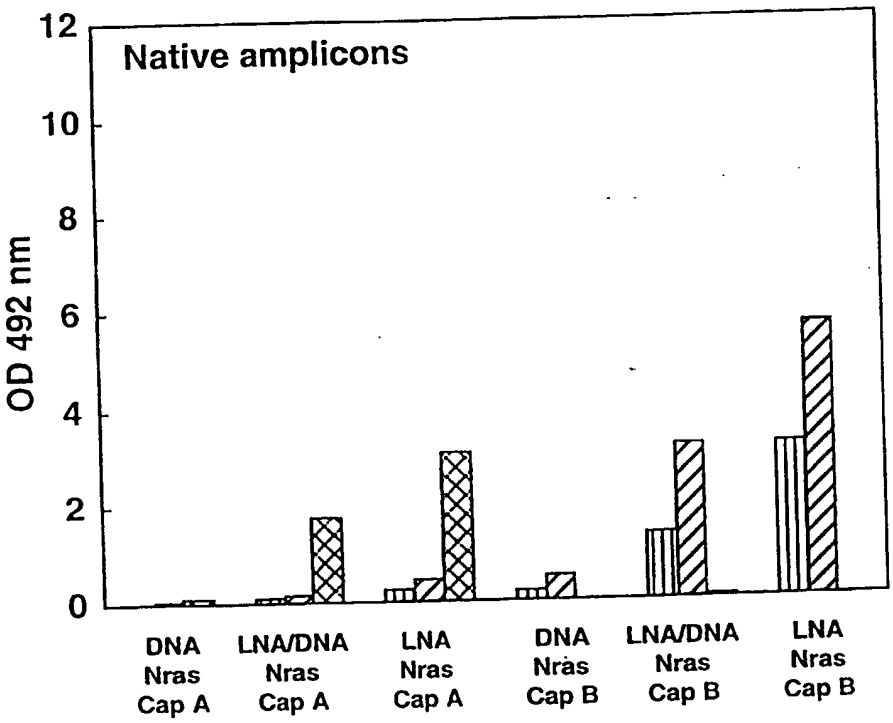

Native amplicons
OD 492 nm
0
2
4
6
8
10
12
DNA Nras Cap A
LNA/DNA Nras Cap A
LNA Nras Cap A
DNA Nras Cap B
LNA/DNA Nras Cap B
LNA Nras Cap B

Fig. 23 A

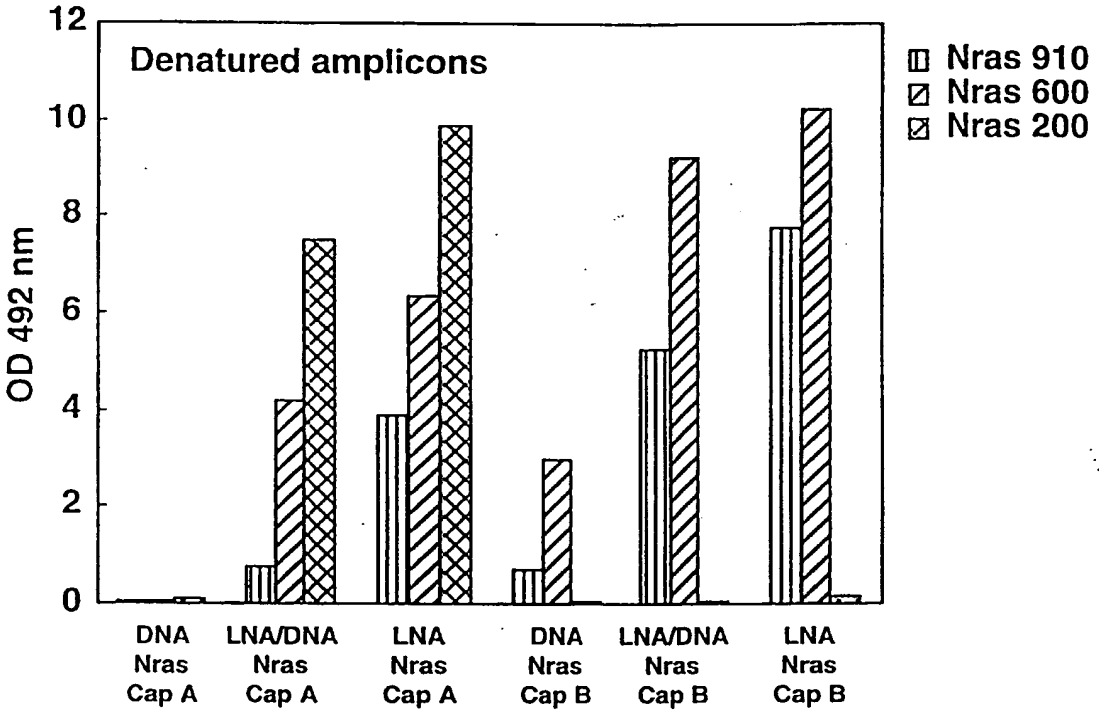
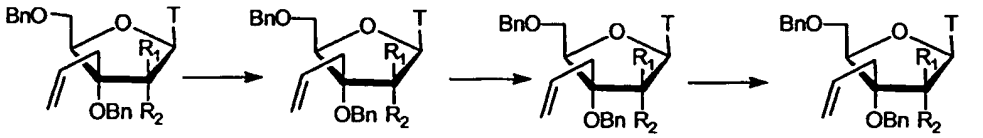
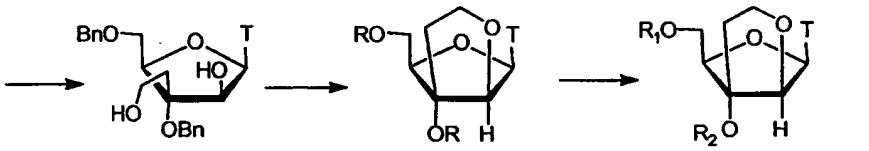

Denatured amplicons
OD 492 nm
0
2
4
6
8
10
12
Nras 910
Nras 600
Nras 200
DNA Nras Cap A
LNA/DNA Nras Cap A
LNA Nras Cap A
DNA Nras Cap B
LNA/DNA Nras Cap B
LNA Nras Cap B

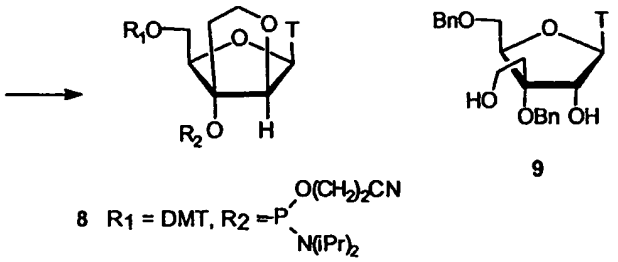
Fig. 23 B



1 R_1=H, R_2=OAc 2 R_1=H, R_2=OH 3 R_1=H, R_2=OMs 4 R_1=OH, R_2=H



5 6 $R_1 = R_2 = H$ 7 R_1 = DMT, R_2 = H



9

8 R_1 = DMT, R_2 = $-P(O(CH_2)_2CN)(N(iPr)_2)$

Fig. 24

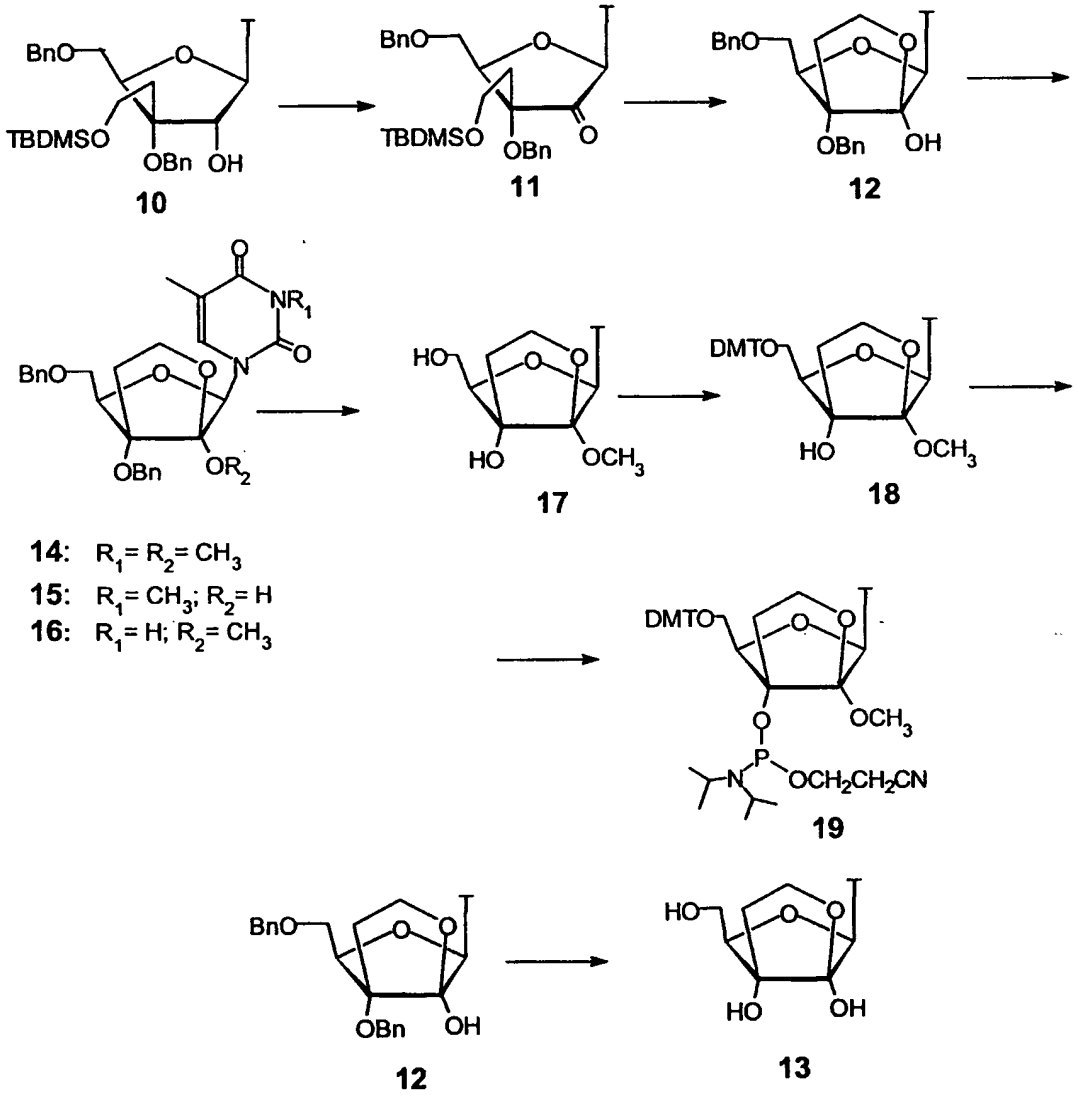
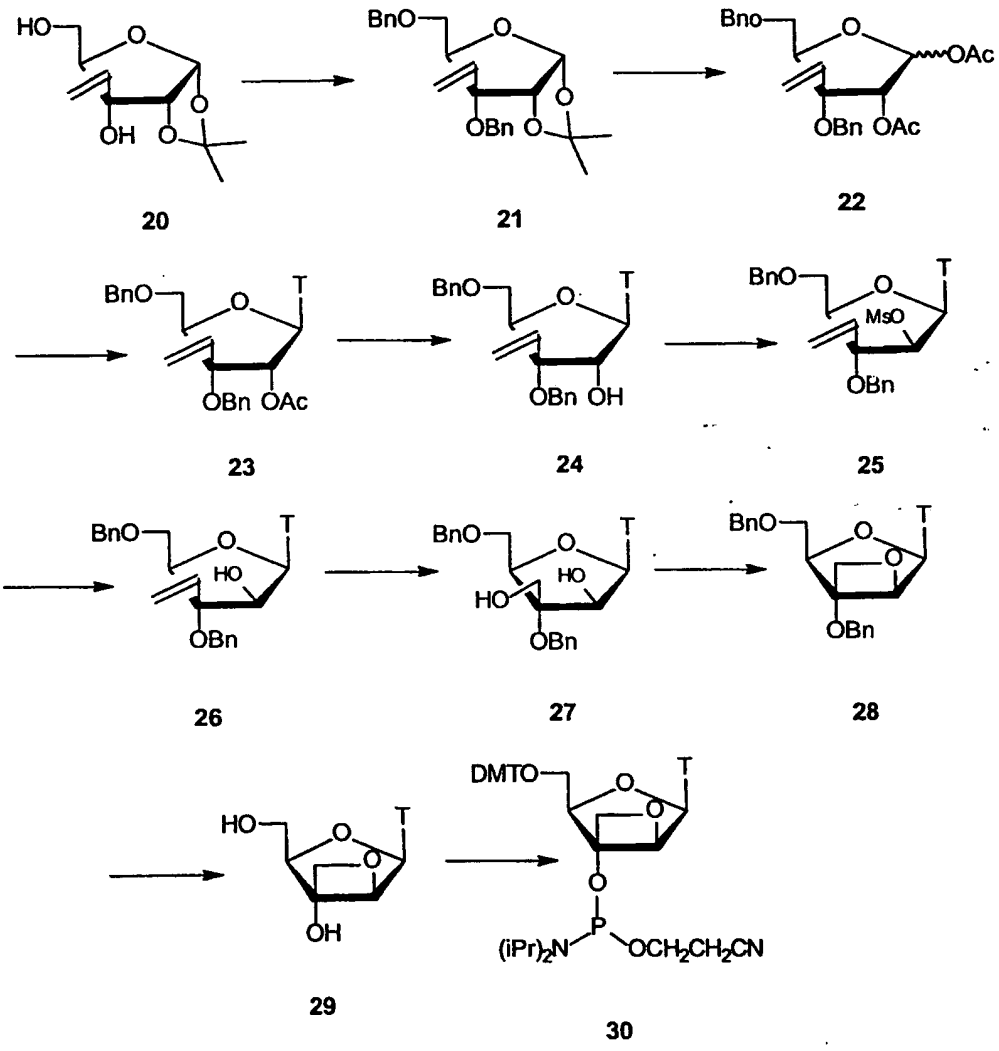

BnO
TBDMSO
OBn
OH
10
11
12
NR1
OR2
HO
OCH3
17
DMTO
18
14: R1= R2= CH3
15: R1= CH3; R2= H
16: R1= H; R2= CH3
OCH2CH2CN
19
12
13

Fig. 25



20 21 22

23 24 25

26 27 28

29 30

Fig. 26

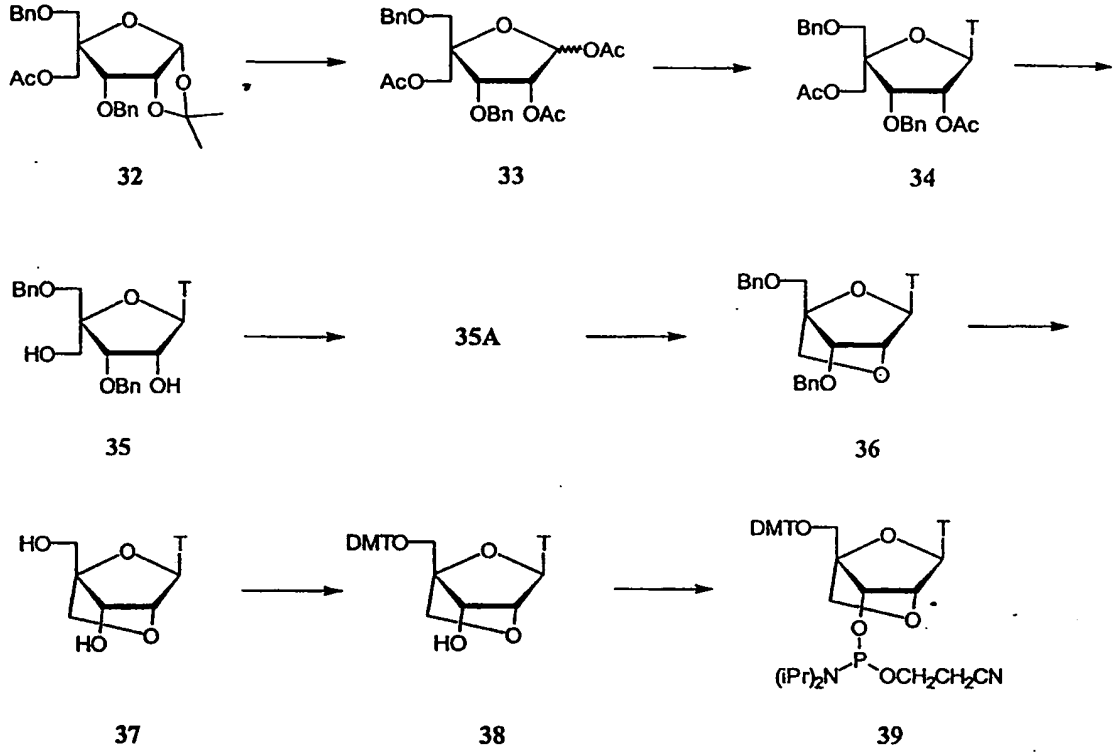

BnO
AcO
OBn
O
T
OAc
OBn OAc
HO
OBn OH
35A
DMTO
(iPr)2N
P
OCH2CH2CN
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39

Fig. 27

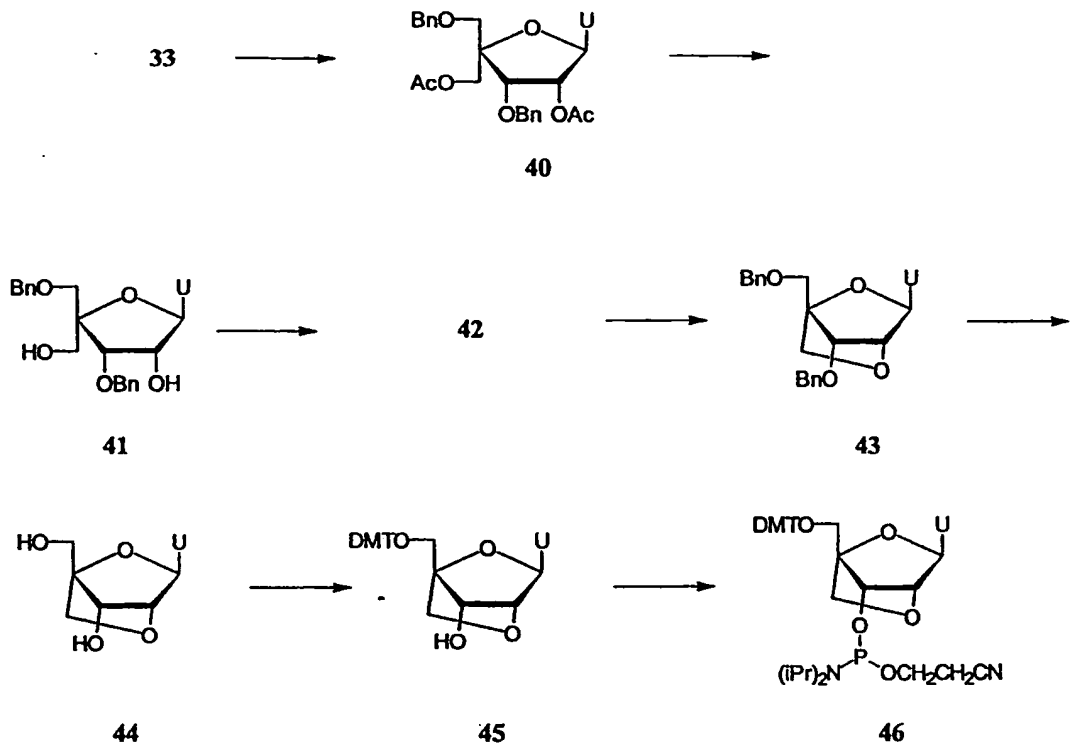

33
BnO
AcO
OBn OAc
U
40
BnO
HO
OBn OH
41
42
BnO
BnO
43
HO
HO
44
DMTO
HO
45
DMTO
(iPr)2N
OCH2CH2CN
46

Fig. 28

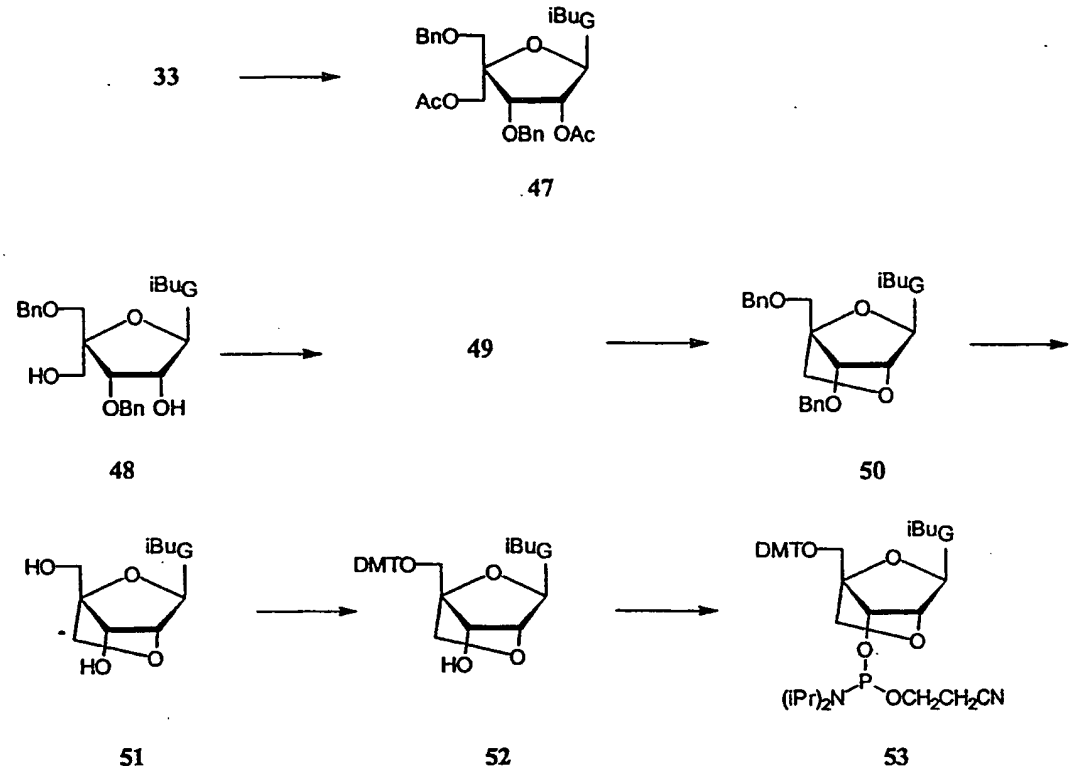

33
iBuG
BnO
AcO
OBn OAc
47
BnO
HO
OBn OH
48
49
BnO
BnO
50
HO
HO
51
DMTO
HO
52
DMTO
(iPr)2N
OCH2CH2CN
53

Fig. 29

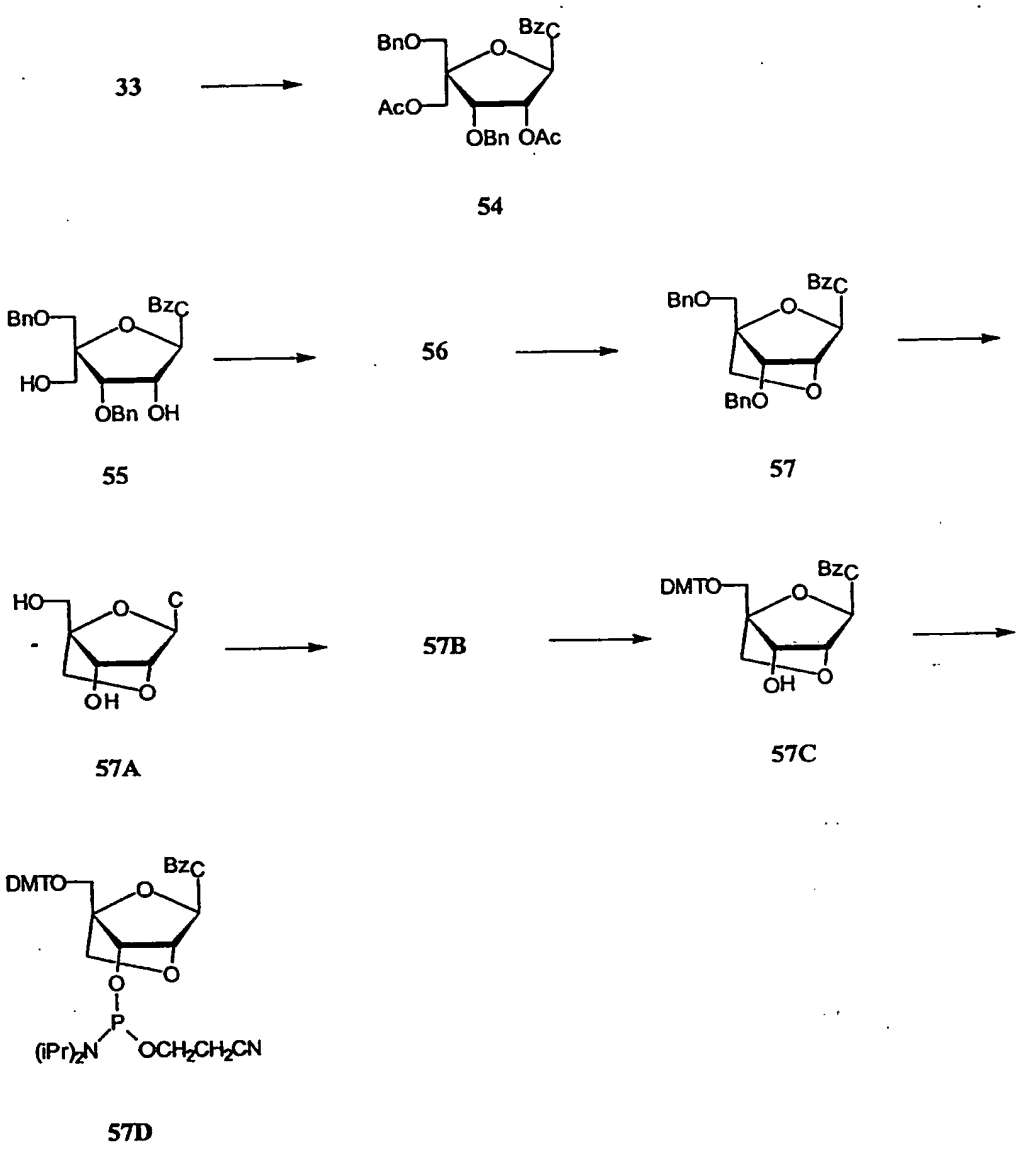

33
BnO
Bz
AcO
OBn OAc
54
BnO
Bz
HO
OBn OH
55
56
BnO
Bz
BnO
57
HO
C
OH
57A
57B
DMTO
Bz
OH
57C
DMTO
Bz
(iPr)2N
OCH2CH2CN
57D

Fig. 30

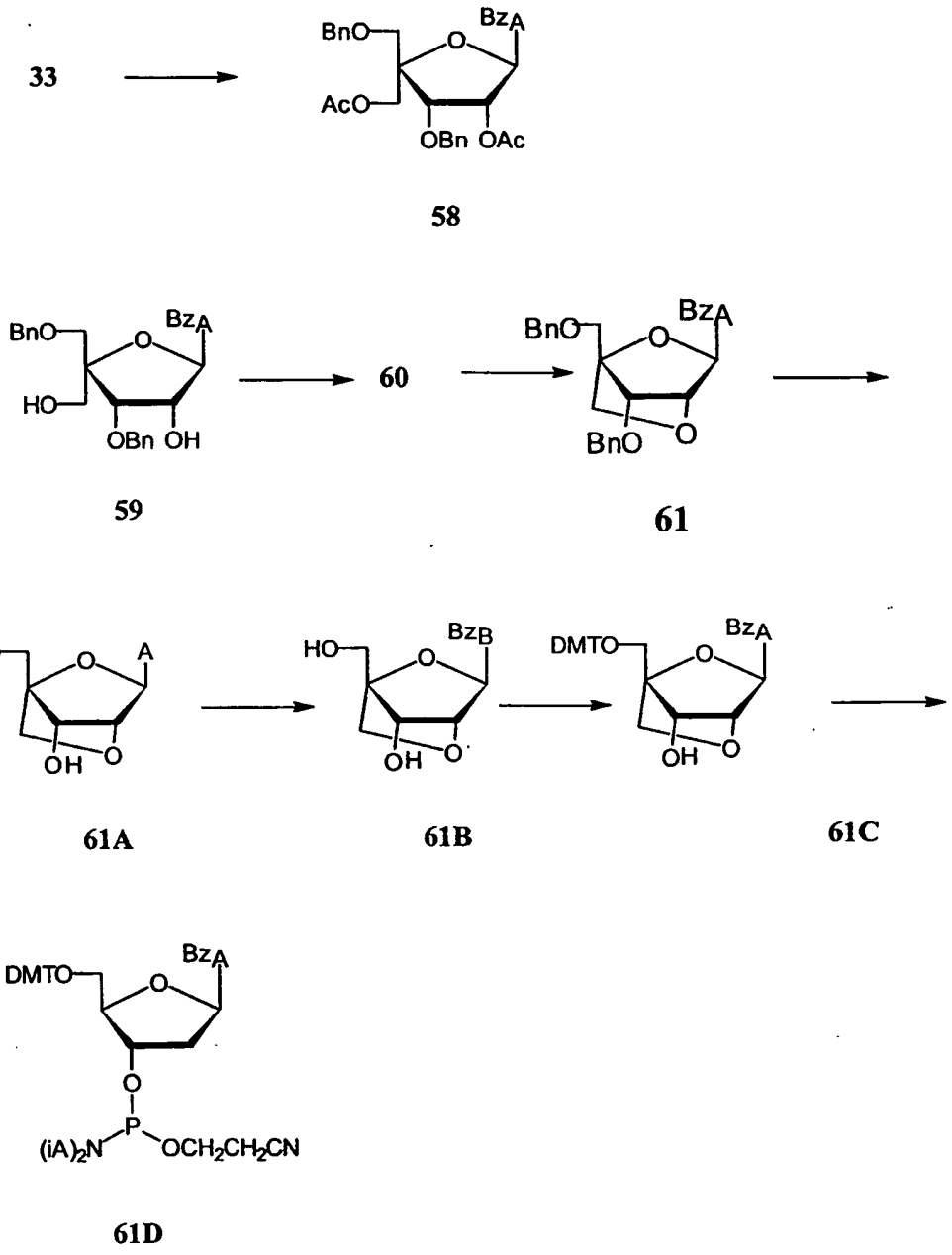
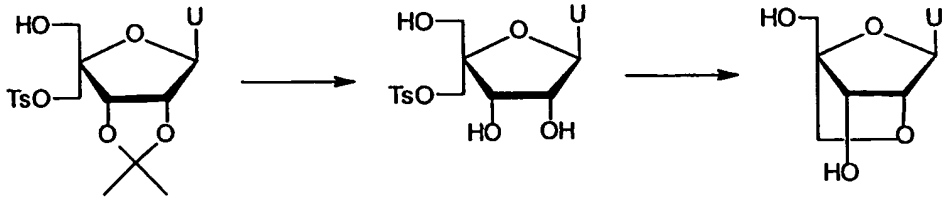
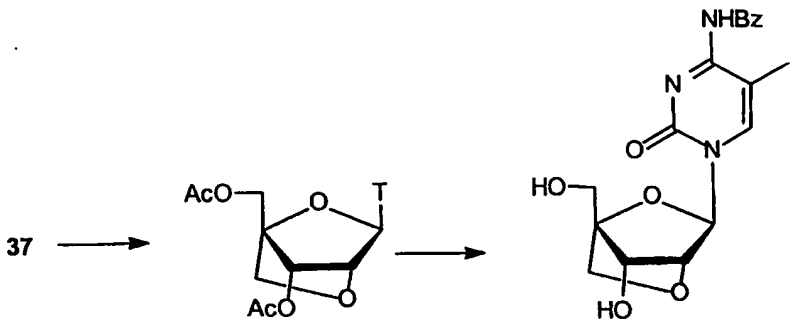

33
BnO
BzA
AcO
OBn OAc
58
BnO
BzA
HO
OBn OH
59
60
BnO
BzA
BnO
61
HO
A
OH
61A
HO
BzB
OH
61B
DMTO
BzA
OH
61C
DMTO
BzA
(iA)2N
OCH2CH2CN
61D

Fig. 31

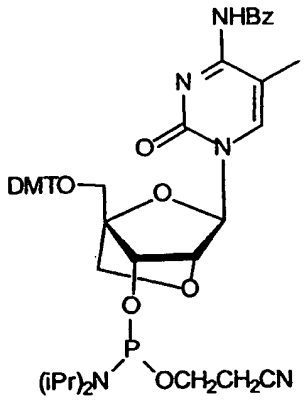


62 63 44

Fig. 32

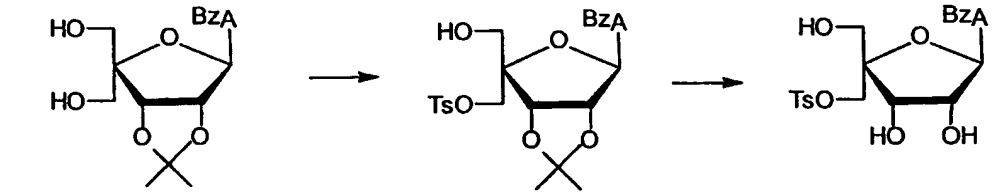


64 65

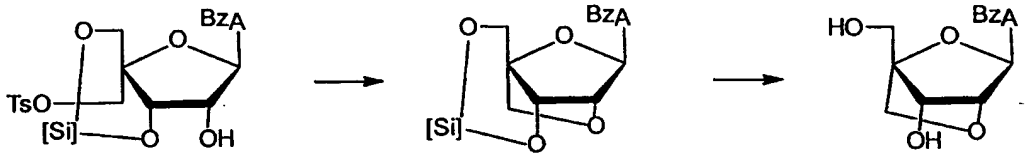


66

Fig. 33



67 68 69



70 71 61B

Fig. 34

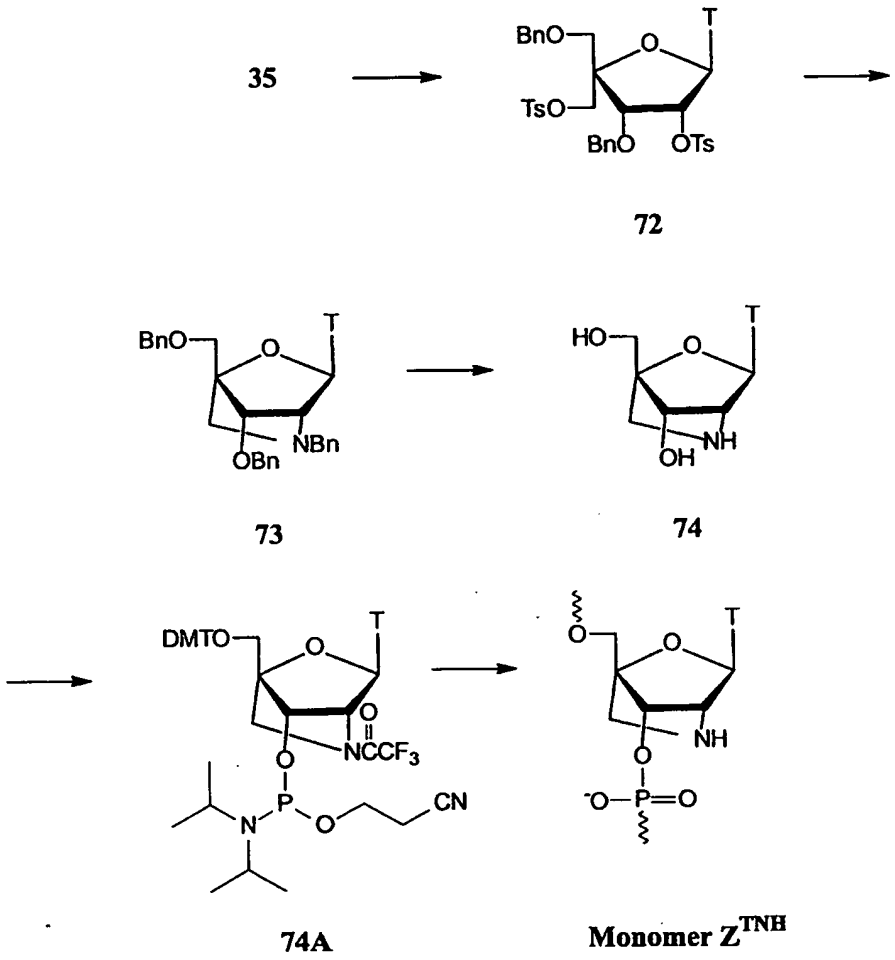

35
BnO
TsO
BnO
OTs
T
O
72
BnO
NBn
OBn
73
HO
NH
OH
74
DMTO
NCCF3
P
N
O
CN
74A
NH
O—P=O
Monomer Z^TNH

Fig. 35

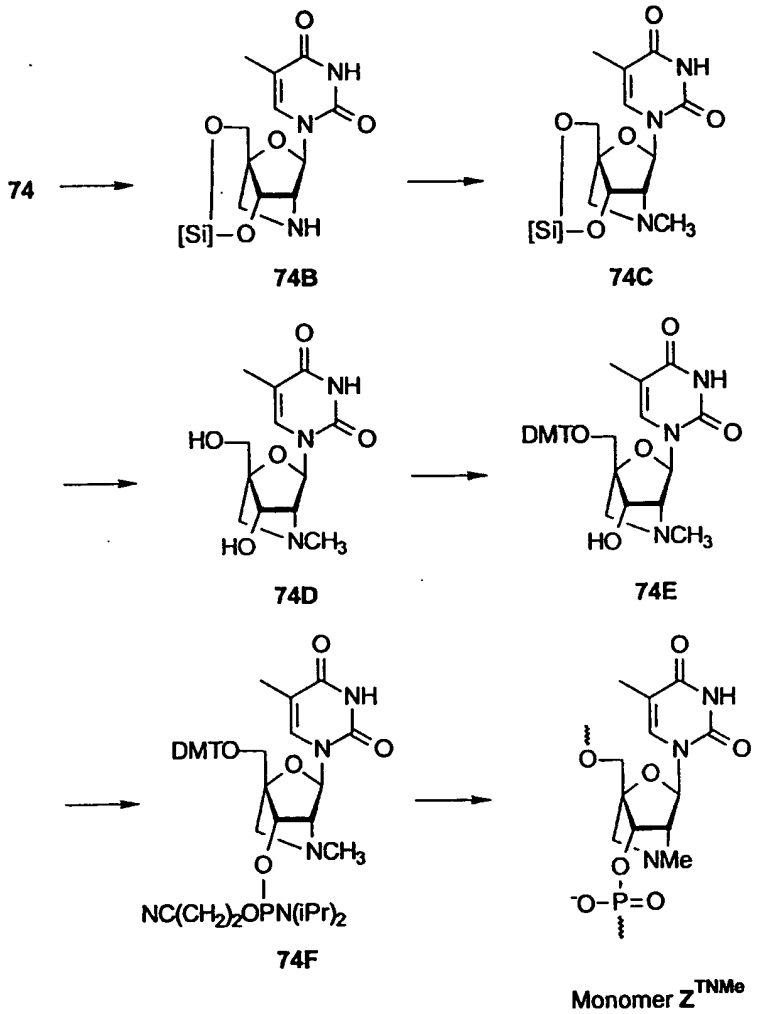

74
74B
74C
74D
74E
74F
Monomer Z^TNMe
DMTO
HO
NCH3
NMe
[Si]–O
NC(CH2)2OPN(iPr)2
O–P=O

Fig. 36

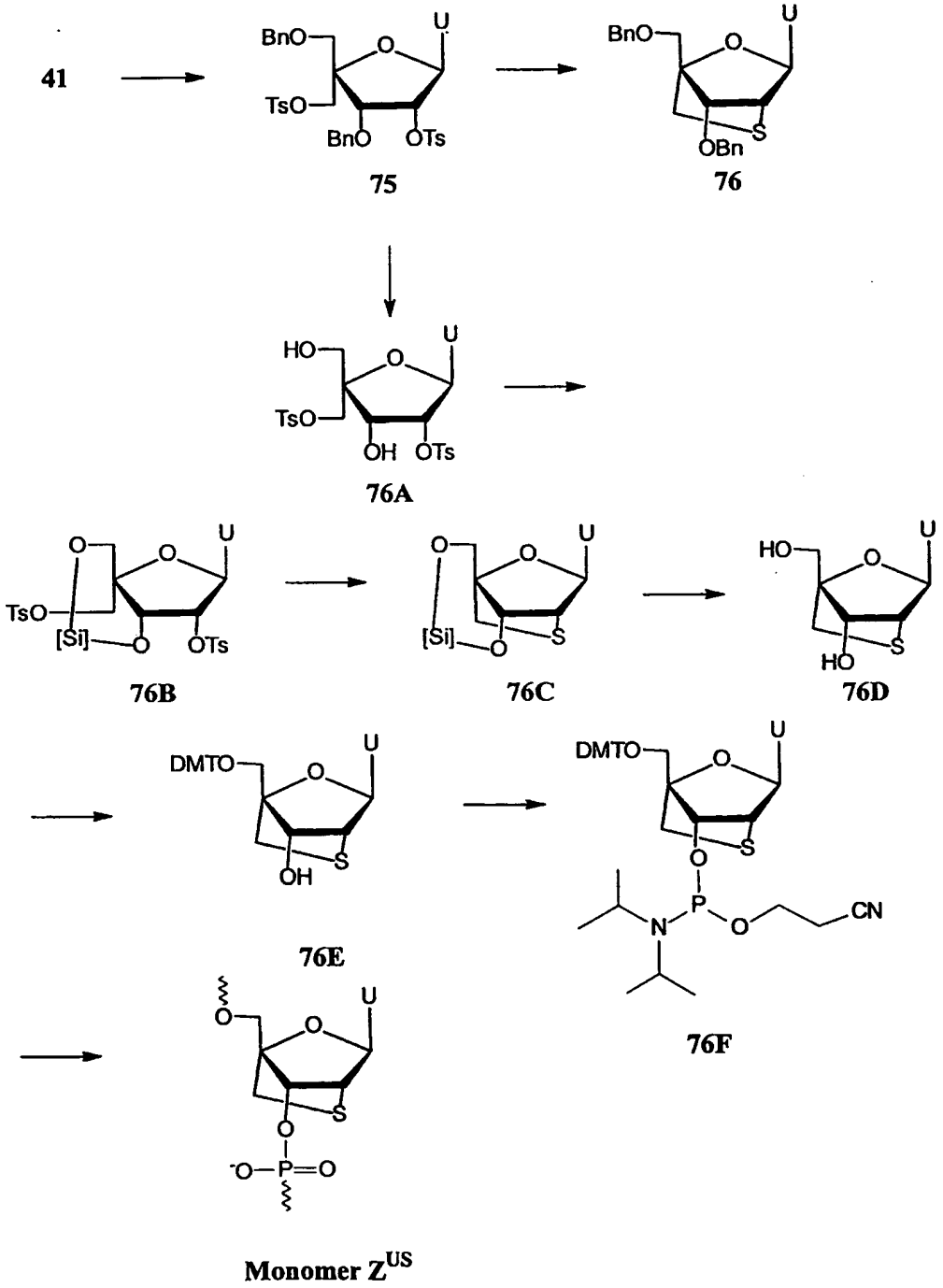

41
BnO
TsO
BnO
OTs
U
O
75
BnO
OBn
S
76
HO
TsO
OH
OTs
76A
TsO
[Si]
O
OTs
76B
[Si]
S
76C
HO
HO
76D
DMTO
OH
76E
DMTO
O
P
N
O
CN
76F
O
O—P=O
Monomer Z^US

Fig. 37

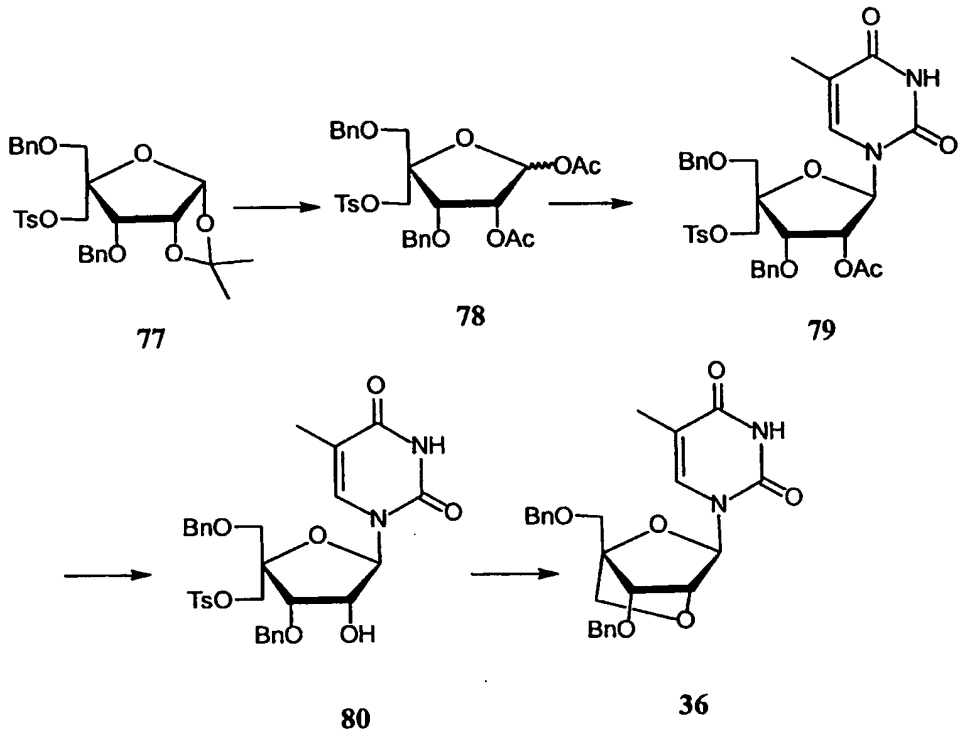

BnO
TsO
BnO
O
O
77
BnO
TsO
BnO
OAc
OAc
78
O
NH
N
O
BnO
TsO
BnO
OAc
79
BnO
TsO
BnO
OH
80
BnO
BnO
36

Fig. 38

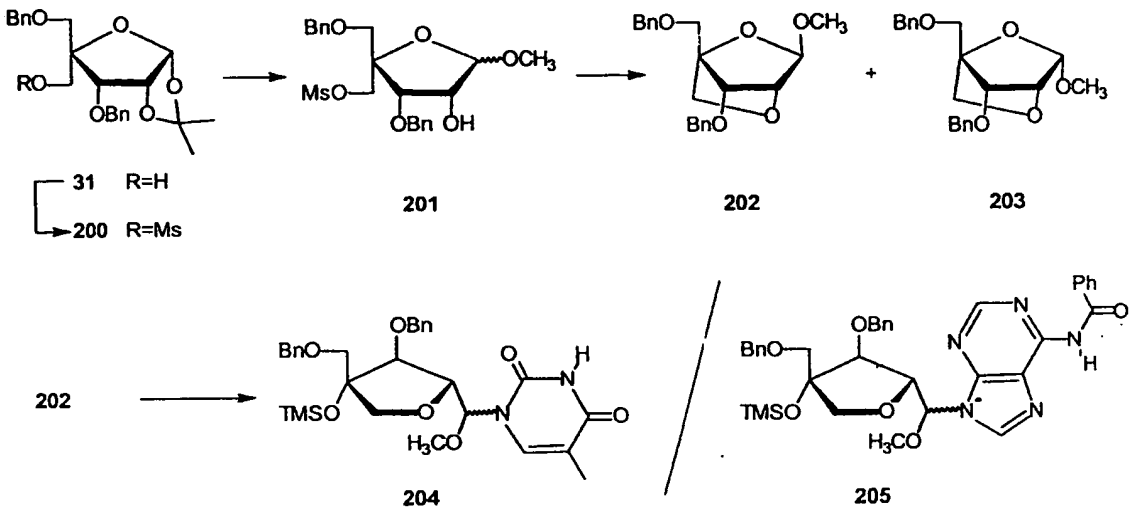

BnO
RO
OBn
O
31 R=H
200 R=Ms
MsO
OCH3
OBn OH
201
202
203
TMSO
H3CO
OBn
N
H
Ph
204
205

Fig. 39

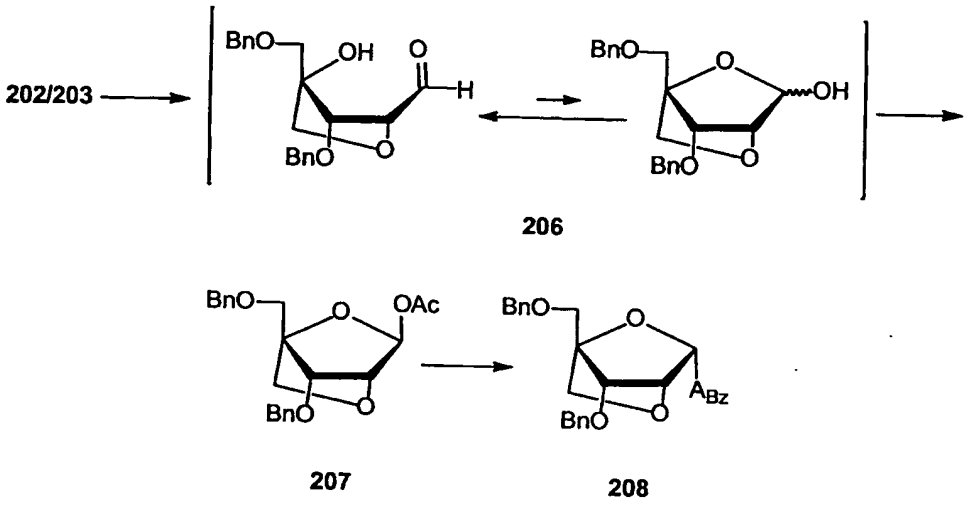

202/203
BnO
OH
O
H
BnO
O
BnO
O
OH
BnO
O
206
BnO
O
OAc
BnO
O
207
BnO
O
ABz
BnO
O
208

Fig. 40

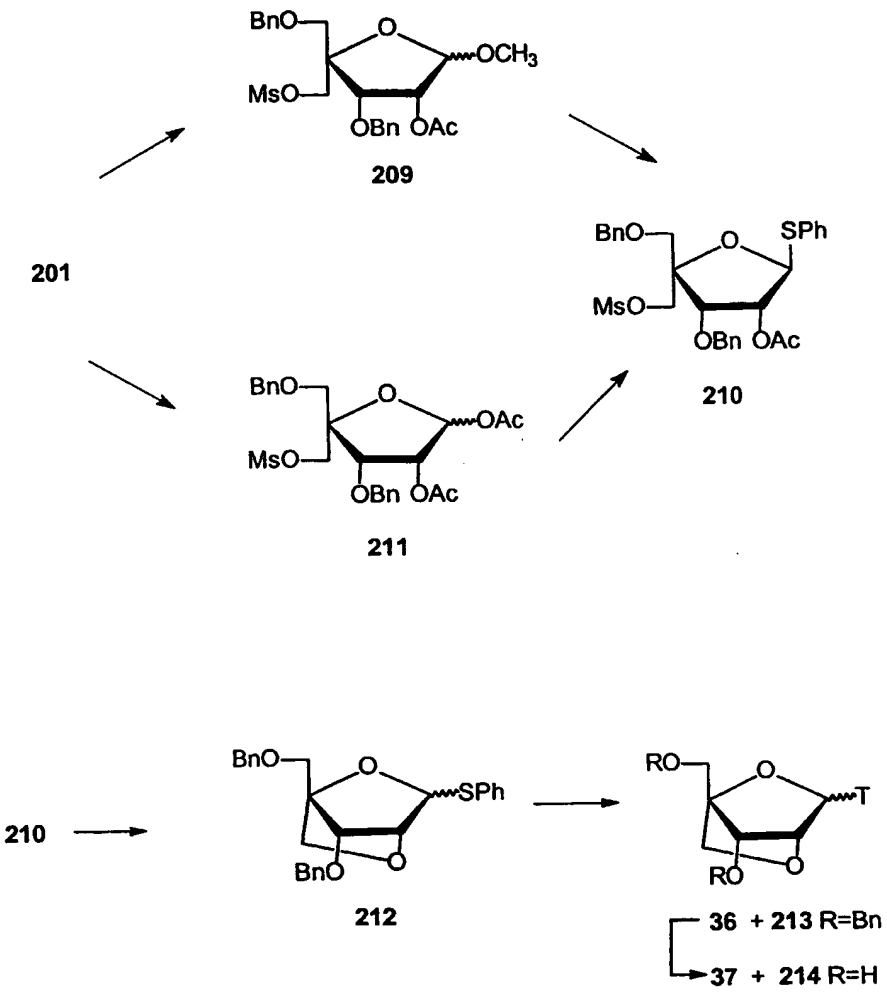

BnO
O
OCH3
MsO
OBn OAc
209
201
BnO
O
SPh
MsO
OBn OAc
210
BnO
O
OAc
MsO
OBn OAc
211
210
BnO
O
SPh
BnO
O
212
RO
O
T
RO
O
36 + 213 R=Bn
37 + 214 R=H

Fig. 41